

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 935SH.

- For proper handset use, read "First Step Guide" in 935SH Starter Guide and this guide beforehand.
- Accessible SoftBank Mobile services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 935SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-41**) about unclear or missing information.

Chapter Contents At A Glance

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Calling	3
Messaging	4
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser	5
Digital TV	6
Camera & Imaging	7
Media Player & S! Applications	8
Handy Extras	9
Entertainment & Communication	10
Handset Security	11
Data Folder & Memory Card	12
Connectivity & File Backup	13
Handset Customization	14
Appendix	15



Notes

- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with handset open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.

Guide Usage Notes	ii
Table of Contents	iii
Accessories	v
Safety Precautions	vi

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts	1-2
Charging Battery	1-4
Power On/Off	1-6
Display & Indicators	1-7
Accessing Functions	1-11
Motion Control	1-18
External Display	1-20
Mobile Manners	1-21
Security Codes	1-22
Basic Tools	1-23
Double Number	1-24
Additional Functions	1-27

2 Basic Operations

Font Size	2-2
Wallpaper	2-3
Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability	2-4
Sounds & Alerts	2-5
Text Entry	2-6
User Dictionary	2-11
Dictionary	2-12
Search	2-14
Scratch Pad	2-15
Phone Book	2-16
Additional Functions	2-19
Troubleshooting	2-24

3 Calling

Emergency Calls	3-2
Voice Calling	3-3
Video Calling	3-5
Decoration Call	3-6
Speed Dial	3-7
Call Log	3-8
Call Time	3-9
Call Barring	3-10
Optional Services	3-12
Additional Functions	3-14
Troubleshooting	3-21

4 Messaging

Messaging	4-2
Sending Messages	4-4
Incoming Messages	4-9
Handling Messages	4-12
Chat Folders	4-15
Mail Groups	4-16
PC Mail	4-17
Additional Functions	4-20
Troubleshooting	4-35

5 Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Internet Services	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Browsing	5-5
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
RSS Feeds	5-8
Additional Functions	5-9
Troubleshooting	5-16

6 Digital TV

Digital TV	6-2
Recording/Playing	6-8
TV Timer	6-10
Time Shift	6-11
Additional Functions	6-12
Troubleshooting	6-18

7 Camera & Imaging

Camera	7-2
Photo Camera	7-3
Video Camera	7-7
Review	7-9
Shooting Modes	7-10
Editing Images	7-13
Printing	7-18
Additional Functions	7-19
Troubleshooting	7-24

8 Media Player & S! Applications

Media Player	8-2
Music	8-4
Video	8-5
Playlists	8-6
S! Appli	8-7
Additional Functions	8-8
Troubleshooting	8-13

9 Handy Extras

Calendar & Tasks	9-2
Alarms	9-7
Wakeup TV	9-9
Relaxation Time	9-11

Calculator	9-12
Expenses Memo	9-13
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-14
Simulated Call	9-18
Stopwatch	9-19
Countdown Timer	9-20
World Clock	9-21
Hour Minder	9-22
Pedometer	9-23
Document Viewer	9-25
Notepad	9-26
ASCII Art	9-27
Voice Recorder	9-28
Scan Barcode	9-29
Create QR Code	9-30
Scan Card	9-31
Scan Text	9-32
Kanji Grabber	9-33
Additional Functions	9-34
Troubleshooting	9-46
10 Entertainment & Communication	
Mobile Widget	10-2
S! Quick News	10-5
S! Information Channel	10-6
e-Books	10-7
S! Friend's Status	10-8
S! Circle Talk	10-11
Near Chat	10-13
Blog Tool	10-14
Additional Functions	10-16
Troubleshooting	10-23

11 Handset Security

Handset Security	11-2
Function Control	11-4
Additional Functions	11-5

12 Data Folder & Memory Card

Data Folder	12-2
Memory Card	12-5
Additional Functions	12-8
Troubleshooting	12-10

13 Connectivity & File Backup

Infrared	13-2
IC Transmission	13-5
Bluetooth®	13-7
External Device Connection	13-11
Backup	13-12
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB)	13-14
Additional Functions	13-17
Troubleshooting	13-20

14 Handset Customization

Date & Time	14-2
Display & Illumination	14-3
Incoming Transmissions	14-5
Sounds	14-6
Connectivity	14-7
Reset	14-9

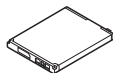
15 Appendix

USIM Card	15-2
Battery	15-4
Software Update	15-5
Cleaning Handset	15-6

Troubleshooting	15-7
Key Assignments	15-9
Pager Codes	15-11
Character Codes	15-12
Weather Indicators	15-18
Specifications	15-19
Menu List	15-25
Index	15-32
Warranty & Service	15-40
Customer Service	15-41

Accessories

■ Battery (SHBCC1)



■ Desktop Holder (SHECJ1)



- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-41**).
- Use specified Charger or Headphones (each sold separately) only.

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.







These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use.

Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
 CAUTION	Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions.

Make sure you thoroughly understand their meanings before reading on.

 Prohibited	Prohibited actions
 Do Not Disassemble	Disassembly prohibited
 Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	Exposure to liquids prohibited
 Do Not Use Wet Hands	Use with wet hands prohibited
 Compulsory	Compulsory actions
 Disconnect Power Source	Unplug Charger from outlet

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Desktop Holder, Charger (Sold Separately) & Memory Card (Sold Separately)



DANGER

Use specified battery, Desktop Holder (included) and Charger (sold separately) only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst or ignite, and may cause Charger to overheat, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Compulsory

Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset or related hardware.

May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Modifying handsets is prohibited by the Radio Law and subject to a penalty.



Do Not Disassemble

Do not expose internal handset parts, battery, Desktop Holder or Charger to liquids.

Do not let liquid-exposed internal parts remain wet; do not charge wet battery. May cause overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction. Use handset/related hardware properly/appropriately.



Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

Do not charge battery in or expose handset or related hardware to extreme heat (e.g., near fire or sources of heat, in direct sunlight, inside vehicles, etc.).

May cause warping/malfunction; battery may leak, overheat, ignite or burst. Handset or related hardware may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries, etc.



Prohibited

Do not force battery/Charger into handset. Check the direction and retry.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited



WARNING

Do not place handset, battery, Desktop Holder or Charger in/on ovens, microwave ovens, pressure cookers, induction stoves or other cooking appliances.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset, Desktop Holder or Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk.

Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; power handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).



Compulsory

Do not apply strong shocks or impacts.

Do not drop/throw handset or related hardware. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite, resulting in fire, electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

If there is unusual sound/odor, smoke or any other abnormality:

Continued use may cause fire, electric shock, etc.; grasp plug to disconnect Charger, power handset off, then remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself.



Compulsory

Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.) away from charging terminals or External Device Port.

May cause short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Do not charge battery while handset is wet.

May cause electric shock or short circuit, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Do not expose handset or related hardware to hot air from dryers, etc. to dry them or for any other purpose. Avoid saunas or hot water.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite. Handset, Desktop Holder or Charger may overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction.



Prohibited



CAUTION

Do not place handset or related hardware on unstable surfaces.

Handset or related hardware may fall, resulting in injury, malfunction, etc.; be especially careful when Vibration is set or while charging.



Prohibited

Keep handset and related hardware out of infants' reach.

Infants may choke from swallowing handset or related hardware or be injured, etc.



Compulsory

If your child is using handset/related hardware, explain all instructions and supervise usage.

Misuse may cause injury, etc.



Compulsory

Battery



DANGER

Read battery label to confirm battery type; use/dispose of battery accordingly.

Symbol on Label	Battery Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

Do not dispose of battery in fire.

Battery may leak, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Do not damage battery (with a nail, hammer, foot, etc.) or subject it to strong impacts or shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

Keep wire or other metal objects away from battery terminals. Do not carry/store battery with conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.



Compulsory



WARNING

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, discontinue handset use and rinse with clean water immediately.

May cause skin damage.



Compulsory

If battery does not charge properly, stop trying.

Battery may leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery, being careful not to burn or injure yourself. Avoid fire sources.

Continued use may cause battery to leak, overheat, burst, ignite, etc.



Compulsory

Keep battery away from pets.

Pet bites may cause battery to leak, burst, overheat, ignite, etc.



Compulsory



CAUTION

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Prohibited

Handset



WARNING

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.

Eyesight may be temporarily affected leading to accidents.

CAUTION:

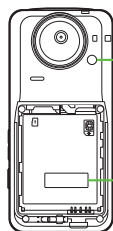
Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.



Prohibited

EN60825-1:1994 A1:2002 & A2:2001

CLASS 1
LED Product



Mobile Light

CAUTION-CLASS 1M
LED RADIATION WHEN OPEN
DO NOT VIEW DIRECTLY WITH
OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

■ Mobile Light LED Properties

- a) Emission Duration: Continuous
- b) Wavelength
White: 400 - 700 nm
- c) Maximum Emission Output
White: 230 μ W (1.2 mW inside handset)

Do not use handset while driving or cycling.

Accidents may result.
Phone use while driving or cycling is prohibited by law and subject to a penalty; park in a legal parking space beforehand.



Prohibited

Power handset off near electronic devices that employ high precision control systems or weak signals.

May cause electronic malfunctions, etc. Be especially careful near the following devices:
Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers/defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.



Compulsory

Power handset off before boarding aircraft to avoid radio waves from interfering with aircraft operation.

If mobile phone use is allowed on board, follow airline or cabin crew instructions regarding handset use.



Compulsory

Users with a heart condition should adjust ringtone Vibration and Volume as needed.

May cause heart damage.



Compulsory

If thunder is heard while outdoors, power handset off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.



Compulsory

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions.

Eyesight may be affected.



Prohibited



CAUTION

Do not use handset when it may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Handset use inside vehicles may cause electronic equipment to malfunction, resulting in accidents.



Prohibited

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Metal and other materials (P.15-19) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Compulsory

Keep handset away from magnetic cards, etc.

Data on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be lost.



Prohibited

Do not swing handset by strap.

May harm self or others; strap may break, resulting in injury or handset malfunction/breakage.



Prohibited

Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently.

Handset may slip, resulting in injury or breakage.



Prohibited

Safety Precautions

Handset may become hot while in use, especially at high temperature.
Prolonged contact with skin may cause burn injuries.



Compulsory

Always maintain some distance from Speaker while ringtones, music or other handset sounds play.
Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Prohibited

Keep fingers, straps, etc. outside when opening/closing handset.
May cause injury, breakage, etc.



Compulsory

Watch TV from a distance in good light.
Watching in poor light or too close may affect eyesight.



Compulsory

Moderate handset volume when using Headphones.
Excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Compulsory

Desktop Holder (Included) & Charger (Sold Separately)



WARNING

Do not cover/wrap Charger/Desktop Holder while charging.

Charger/Desktop Holder may overheat, resulting in fire, malfunction, etc.



Prohibited

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire, malfunction, etc.

- AC Charger (sold separately):
AC 100V-240V Input
- In-Car Charger (sold separately; use in negative earth vehicles only):
DC 12V/24V Input



Prohibited

Do not use power adapters. Using Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Leave Charger unplugged during periods of disuse; grasp plug to disconnect it.

May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Disconnect
Power Source

Use only the specified fuse for In-Car Charger (sold separately).

Non-specified fuse may cause fire or malfunction. See In-Car Charger manual for details.



Compulsory

If liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) seep inside Charger, grasp plug and disconnect it immediately.

May cause electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect
Power Source

If plug is dusty, grasp it and disconnect Charger, then clean with dry cloth.

Fire may result.



Compulsory

Do not use In-Car Charger (sold separately) in positive earth vehicles.

May cause fire, etc. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Prohibited

Plug Charger firmly into the outlet, keeping the plug and Charger/Desktop Holder charging terminals away from conductive material (pencil lead, metallic strip, metal jewelry, etc.).

May cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not touch Charger plug with wet hands.

May cause electric shock, malfunction, etc.



Do Not Use
Wet Hands

Do not touch Charger if thunder is heard.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Prohibited

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.



Prohibited

Do not expose Desktop Holder (included) or Charger (sold separately) to liquids and high humidity (e.g., precipitation, bath/shower room, restroom, etc.).

May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.



Prohibited



CAUTION

Grasp plug and disconnect Charger before cleaning.

May cause electric shock, etc.



Disconnect
Power Source

Always grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger.

Pulling the plug by cord may damage cord, causing electric shock, fire, etc.



Compulsory

Do not subject AC Charger (sold separately) to strong shocks or impacts while it is plugged into the outlet.

May cause malfunction or injury.



Prohibited

Do not touch charging terminals of Desktop Holder while it is connected to the outlet.

May cause burn injuries.



Prohibited

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment"

(Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



WARNING

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators.



Compulsory

If you intend to use electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemaker/defibrillator outside medical facilities, consult the vendor on radio wave effects.

Radio waves may interfere with electronic medical equipment.



Compulsory

Observe these rules inside medical facilities to avoid effects of radio waves on electronic medical equipment:

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals; cancel the setting that powers handset on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.
- Even in lobbies or other places where handset use is permitted, keep handset off near electronic medical equipment.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.



Compulsory

Power handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near; cancel the setting that powers handset on automatically (alarm, etc.) beforehand.

Radio waves may interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.



Compulsory

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions/TV signal reception may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- For proper use of Memory Card (sold separately), read the manual beforehand.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.** Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back. Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.

Handset & Hardware Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (up to 40°C for temporary use in bath/shower rooms, etc.) and 35% - 90% humidity.
- Avoid extreme temperatures or direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Battery may not charge properly if ports/terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Clean with dry cloth, cotton swab, etc.
- Clean handset with soft dry cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
 - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.
- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always power handset off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.
- Do not remove Memory Card or power handset off while using the card; may result in data loss or malfunction.
- When walking outside, moderate handset volume to avoid accidents.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications; TV. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.14-7**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments.
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

CE Declaration of Conformity

C E 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 935SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address: <http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

Battery - CAUTION

Use specified battery or Charger only.

Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.

As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
935SH	0.525 W/kg	0.508 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

**Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
935SH	APYHRO00100	0.461 W/kg	0.629 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at <https://fjallfloss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm> under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left). Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

Water Resistance

935SH Water Resistance

935SH complies with IPX5 (former JIS protection level 5)¹ and IPX7 (JIS protection level 7)² water protection standards, with Port Covers closed and Battery Cover locked firmly.

¹IPX5 compliant means that this handset continues to function as a phone after being subjected to a water jet (approximately 12.5 liters/min.) discharged from a nozzle (inner diameter: 6.3 mm), from all directions (approximately 3 m from handset) for at least 3 minutes.

²IPX7 compliant means that this handset continues to function as a phone and no water seeps inside after being gently lowered into a tank filled with still tap water (at room temperature) to the depth of 1 m, and immersed at the bottom for approximately 30 minutes.

Malfunction resulting from misuse is not covered by the warranty.

- Lock Battery Cover and close Port Covers firmly. Liquid may seep inside handset if there is debris (hair, sand, fibers, etc.) between cover and base.
- If Battery/Port Covers are left open liquid exposure may cause handset malfunction/electric shock. Power handset off, then remove battery.
- If handset is wet, wipe it with dry cloth.
- Do not open/close Battery/Port Cover with wet hands or while handset is wet.
- Handset is resistant to fresh/tap water at normal temperature (5°C - 35°C) only.

Precautions

- Do not subject handset to soap, detergent, bath powder/oil, sea/pool/spa water, hot water, sand, dirt, etc.
- Do not soak handset in bath or pool; never use it in water (including opening/closing of handset and pressing keys).
- Handset is not resistant to water pressure. Avoid high-pressure water/shower (over 6 liters/min.) or water immersion.
- Do not expose handset to extreme humidity for long periods; avoid prolonged use in bath/shower rooms.
- Do not use in saunas. Avoid hot air from dryers, etc.

- Use handset within 5°C - 35°C (up to 40°C for temporary use in bath/shower rooms, etc.) and 35% - 90% humidity.
- Avoid extreme temperatures (e.g., near stoves, inside refrigerators, etc.).
- Volume may be low when Microphone/ Earpiece/Speaker is wet; dry handset before use.
- Battery, Desktop Holder and optional accessories are not waterproofed.
- Do not subject handset to strong shocks or impacts; do not poke Microphone, Earpiece, Speaker, etc. with a cotton swab or sharp object; water resistance may be affected.
- Avoid placing handset directly on sand. Sand may penetrate Earpiece, Speaker, etc., resulting in low volume.
- Do not move handset directly from a cold place to a warm humid place; condensation may occur. Should this happen, dry handset naturally at room temperature.
- 935SH does not float on water.
- Keep handset out of heavy rain.
- Do not let liquid-exposed handset remain wet; exposure to cold may freeze liquid causing malfunction.
- Damaged Battery/Port Cover affects water resistance; contact a SoftBank Shop.

Charging Precautions

- Battery, Desktop Holder and optional accessories are not waterproofed. Avoid exposure to liquids or high humidity (e.g., precipitation, bath/shower room, restroom, etc.); may cause fire, electric shock or damage.
- Never charge battery while handset is wet; may cause fire or damage due to electric shock or short-circuit.
- Close Port Cover firmly after charging via External Device Port. Using Desktop Holder helps secure External Device Port waterproofing.
- Do not touch Desktop Holder or Charger with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.
- Do not use Desktop Holder or Charger in rooms in which water is regularly in use (kitchen, bath/shower room, etc.); may cause fire or electric shock.

Gasket Care & Maintenance

Proper care of the rubber seals around Port Covers and Battery Cover is crucial for continued handset water resistance.

- Do not remove or damage gaskets. Keep them clean.
- Do not insert sharp objects through Port/Battery Cover gaps; may damage gasket and affect water resistance.
- If Port/Battery Cover gasket is damaged or deformed, replace it with a new one.
- To maintain water resistance, replace gaskets every two years regardless of their condition.
- For gasket replacements, contact a SoftBank Shop.
- Damaged Port Cover affects water resistance; contact a SoftBank Shop.
- If Battery Cover is damaged, replace it with a new one. Use of damaged cover may cause electric shock, battery corrosion, etc. due to water seepage.

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsibly.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software; do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**. This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.

BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.

Powered by JBlend™.

Copyright 1997-2009

Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

Copyright© 2009 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

IrSimple™, IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

The frequency band utilized by handset Bluetooth® function is shared with industrial, scientific or medical equipment, including household microwave ovens, etc., and used by radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using Bluetooth®, visually confirm that no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band are in use nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move or cancel Bluetooth® function immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.15-41** "Customer Service."

This radio station utilizes 2.4 GHz band with FHSS modulation. Maximum transmission radius is 10 meters (32 feet).

2.4FH1

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by MascotCapsule®.
Powered by MascotCapsule®/3DView package™.
MascotCapsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.
©2002-2009 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
㊟ is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



**ADOBE®
FLASH®
ENABLED**

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe Flash Lite Copyright © 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Wakeup TV, VeilView, Smartlink, Simulated Call, AQUOS, AQUOSハイビジョンレコーダー (AQUOSブルーレイ), Egao focus shutter, Furimuki shutter, Chase focus and Animation View are trademarks or registered trademarks of SHARP Corporation.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies.

Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Genius Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

Meikyo Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

- Genius E-J-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Genius JE-Dic MX.net ©KONISHI Tomoshichi, MINAMIDE Kosei & Taishukan, 2008
- Meikyo J-Dic MX.net ©KITAHARA Yasuo & Taishukan, 2008
- Imidas Encyclopedia ©SHUEISHA Inc.
- Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary ©Shogakukan Inc.
- Hot Pepper Pockets is a registered trademark of Recruit Co., Ltd.
- Amazon.co.jp is a trademark of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.



EUPHONY™ (a comprehensive sound enhancement system utilizing a virtual sound source processing technology) is a trademark of DiMAGIC Co., Ltd.



Dynamic Range Adjustment is based on iridix technology by Apical Limited.

Kanji Grabber™ is a trademark of Information System Products Co., Ltd.

PhotoSolid®, FaceSolid®, MovieSolid®, FrameSolid®, PhotoScouter® and TrackSolid™ are registered trademarks or trademarks of Morpho, Inc.

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

S! Application, Mobile Widget, S! Quick News, S! Information Channel, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Near Chat, S! Addressbook Back-up, Weather Indicator, Double Number, Customized Screen, S! Familiar Usability, Video Call, Lifestyle-Appli, Input Memory, Decoration Call, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Graphic Mail, S! Mail, Feeling Mail, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail, Secure Remote Lock, Content Value Package, S-1 battle and Simple Select are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

935SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 935SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.688 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-emma.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

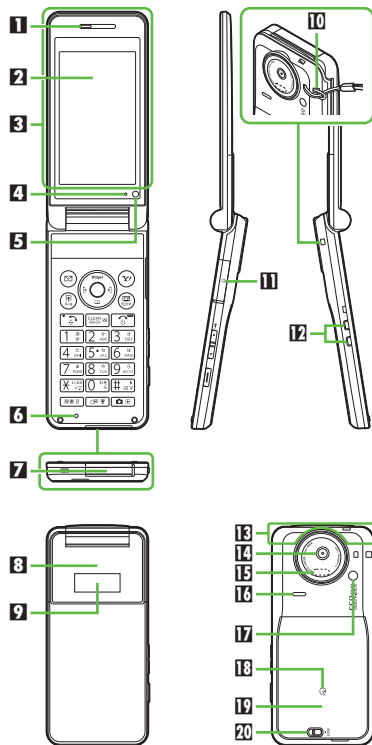
Handset Parts	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-2
Charging Battery	1-4
Power On/Off	1-6
Handset Power On/Off	1-6
Display & Indicators	1-7
Display	1-7
Indicators	1-9
Accessing Functions	1-11
Main Menu	1-12
Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut	1-13
Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)	
.....	1-14
Standby Shortcuts	1-15
Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)	
.....	1-17

Motion Control	1-18
External Display	1-20
External Display	1-20
Mobile Manners	1-21
Security Codes	1-22
Basic Tools	1-23
My Details & Basic Tools	1-23
Double Number	1-24
Using Double Number	1-24
Modes	1-25
Additional Functions	1-27

1

Getting Started

Parts & Functions

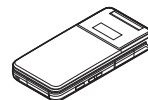


- 1 Earpiece
- 2 Display
- 3 TV Antenna Location
- 4 Pressure Vent
- 5 Light Sensor
- 6 Microphone
- 7 External Device Port (with Port Cover)
- 8 Small Light
- 9 External Display
- 10 Strap Eyelet
- 11 Headphone Port (with Port Cover)
- 12 Charging Terminals
- 13 Internal Antenna Location
- 14 External Camera (lens cover)
- 15 Infrared Port
- 16 Speaker
- 17 Mobile Light
- 18 Logo
- 19 Battery Cover
- 20 Battery Cover Lever

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Pressure Vent, Light Sensor or Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port Cover after Port use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

Handset Positions

Handset Closed



Keep handset closed when not in use.

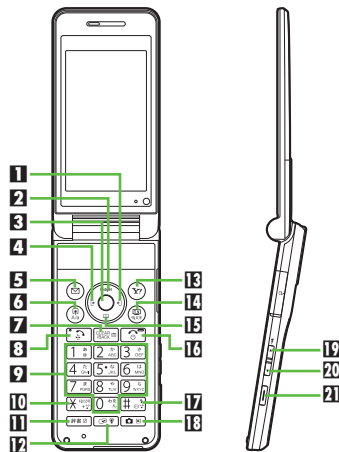
Handset Open



Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Handset Keys

- Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.
- Change functions with * via Set Key Shortcut as needed.



- 1 Multi Selector (right)** Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel Infrared*.
- 2 Multi Selector (up)** Open Mobile Widget window. Long Press to open PC Site Browser menu*.
- 3 Center Key** Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

- 4 Multi Selector (left)** Open Dialed Numbers. Long Press to activate/cancel Bluetooth*.
- 5 Mail Key** Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open SI Mail Composition window*.
- 6 Shortcuts & A/a Key** Open Shortcuts menu. Long Press to show active indicators (Status Icon List).
- 7 Clear/Back Key** Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.
- 8 Start Key** Open All Calls. Long Press to open Double Number Mode menu.
- 9 Keypad** Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.
- 10 * Key** Enter *, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open S! Friend's Status member list.
- 11 Dictionary Key** Open Dictionary. Long Press to activate VeilView.
- 12 Multi Job & Manner Key** Select handset mode. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 13 Yahoo! Keitai Key** Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to activate Familink Remote*.
- 14 TV & Text Key** Activate TV. Long Press to open Change Menu window.
- 15 Multi Selector (down)** Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries*.

- 16 Power On/Off Key** Toggle Standby display. Long Press to turn handset power off.
- 17 # Key** Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 18 Camera Key** Activate mobile camera. Long press to activate Review.

Side Keys

- 19 Volume Up Key** Long Press to illuminate Mobile Light.
Closed: Scroll External Display indicators, etc.
- 20 Volume Down Key** Show/hide Softkeys.
Closed: Scroll External Display indicators, etc. Long Press to check e-money balance.
- 21 Shutter Key** **Closed:** Toggle Clock view.

Multi Selector & Side Keys

- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press or	
Press or	
Press , , or	
Press or	

Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.

Charging Battery Overseas

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Desktop Holder

Together with Desktop Holder, use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only.

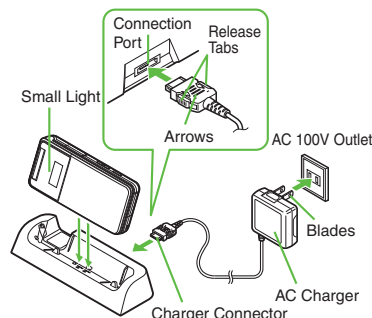
- In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."
- **AC Charger and Desktop Holder are not waterproofed. Do not charge battery while handset is wet.**
- Handset and AC Charger may warm during charging.

Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

Important Desktop Holder Usage Notes

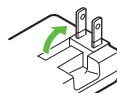
- Do not subject to force/pressure.
- Do not attempt to open handset while placed in Desktop Holder.



1 Insert Charger Connector into Desktop Holder

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

2 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



3 Place handset onto Desktop Holder

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

4 Disconnect 935SH from Desktop Holder

5 Unplug AC Charger

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.

When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

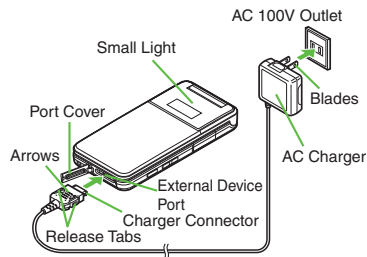
Desktop Holder Materials

- Desktop Holder includes a part containing plant-derived resin, a new eco-friendly material which is expected to reduce CO₂ emissions and oil usage in the entire product life cycle compared to conventional petroleum resin.

Charging with AC Charger Only

Insert Charger Connector into External Device Port.

Using Desktop Holder helps secure External Device Port waterproofing.

**USB Charge**

Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

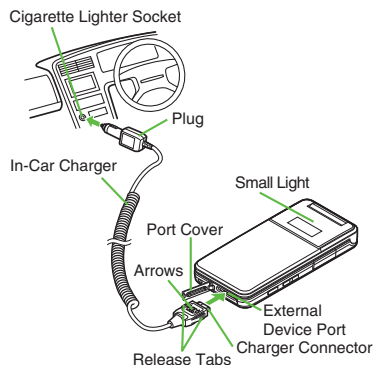
- Download and install USB Cable driver beforehand.
- Handset must be on to charge battery.
- Battery may not charge if handset is connected through a USB hub.

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.

Important In-Car Charger Usage Notes

- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.

**1 Open Port Cover****2 Insert Charger Connector**

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket**4 Start car engine**

- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

5 Unplug Charger**6 Disconnect handset**

- Squeeze Charger Connector release tabs and pull straight out to remove.











7 Replace Port Cover**Advanced**


👉 ● Disabling USB Charge (P.1-27)

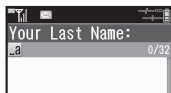
Handset Power On/Off

Power On

Follow these steps when powering on 935SH for the first time:


- 1  (Long)
 - Power On Graphic and waterproofing guidance appear; follow the steps below.
 →  →  →  → **設定**
 →  → **Language** →  → **English**
 →  →  (Long) →  (Long) →
 Change Menu window opens

- 2 **Select option** → 
 - Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.



- My Details setup starts.

- 3 **Enter last name** →  → **Enter first name** → 
 - Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

- 4 **Yes or No** → 



Standby

- Choose **No** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed

- **Insert USIM Card** appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information


Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when , ,  or  is pressed for the first time.



Follow these steps to retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services and TV; retrieval automatically sets Clock:

- 1 **Yes** →  → **Retrieval starts**
- 2 

Power Off

- 1  (Long)
 - After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Display

Standby

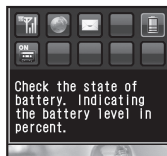


Hereafter, most screenshots omit Mobile Widgets and Standby Shortcuts.

Indicator Descriptions

Check active indicators and their descriptions. (Status Icon List)

1 (Long)



- Active indicators are enlarged; description for selected indicator appears.
- Use to select indicators to view their descriptions.
- Press to open menu/window (e.g., Battery Meter window from battery strength indicator). May be unavailable for some indicators.

Information

Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.






Information Window

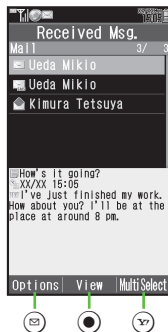
Information label (e.g., **Message**, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press to open it.

Advanced

- Handling Information list (P.1-27)

Softkeys



Functions/operations assigned to , , and  appear at the bottom of Display in portrait orientation with handset open.



Display Saving

Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key to activate it.

Backlight

- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press  -  to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).

Indicators

Display Indicators

and indicate line type in Dual Mode (P.1-24).

Basic Status

1		Within 3G range
2		Within GSM range
3		International roaming in progress
2		Signal strength ¹
3		Packet transmission available
4		Battery strength ²

¹The more bars the better.

²Battery strength % (appears when Display activates, etc.) is an approximation.

Function Status

1		Active S! Application
2		Paused S! Application
1		Music playback in progress
1		TV recording in progress (handset)
1		TV recording in progress (Memory Card)
2		Memory Card in use
2		Memory Card formatting
3		TV Timer/TV Recording Timer set
3		Music playback in progress (via Bluetooth [®])
4		Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

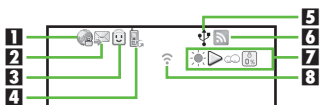
Notifications


1		Unread mail
1		Unread Delivery Report
2		Answer Phone active & message recorded
2		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3		New Voicemail
4		Missed Call or new mail on idle line
5		S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
6		Contents Key received
7		Unread S! Information Channel info
7		Software Update result
7		Unread S! Quick News info
8		Unread S! Friend's Status notification or unanswered registration request

Warnings

1		Mail memory low
2		Message delivery failure
3		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

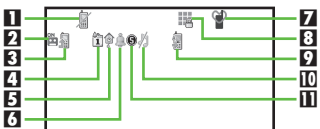
■ Transmissions








1	SSL browsing in progress ¹
2	Waiting packet transmission
2	Receiving mail
2	Sending mail
3	S! Friend's Status online
3	Positioning in progress ²
4	Software Update in progress
5	USB Cable connected
	USB transmission in progress
	Infrared transmission in progress
	Infrared file transfer in progress
	Bluetooth® transmission ready
	Bluetooth® transmission in progress ( , appears for multiple connections)
	Bluetooth® talk in progress
	IC Transmission in progress
	S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
	PC Site Browser in use
6	RSS-compatible site
7	Weather Indicator
8	Infrared transmission ready

¹Hidden while Mobile Widget is in use.²Flashes while positioning.

■ Settings



1	Offline Mode active
2	Answer Phone active
3	Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: Always *)
4	Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
4	Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
5	Hour Minder active
6	Alarm set
6	Wakeup TV set
7	Manner mode active
	Drive mode active
	Original mode active
7	VeilView active
8	Keypad Lock active
8	IC Card Lock active
9	Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active

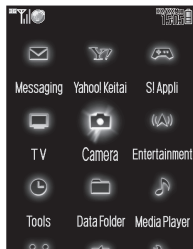
		Ringtone (Silent)
10		Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
		Vibration active
11		Show Secret Data active
		Function Lock active

*Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

Accessing Functions

Use the following methods as needed.

Main Menu



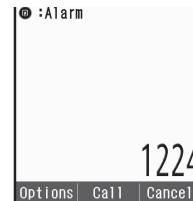
Repeat menu item selection.

Select menu items

Enter numbers

Use shortcuts

Quick Operations



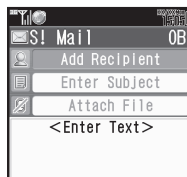
Enter numbers to access functions.
To activate functions, press the corresponding key.

Shortcuts



Access assigned functions (changeable).

Key Shortcut



Long Press (Ⓢ), (Ⓢ) or (Ⓢ) to access assigned functions (changeable).

Standby Shortcuts



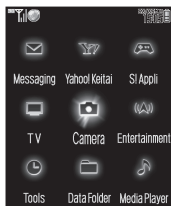
Save functions to Standby.

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active, then toggle function windows as needed.


Main Menu

Menu Item Selection



1 




- Main Menu opens.

2 Use  to select menu item
➔ 



- Menu/window opens.
- If Sub Menu opens, use  to select an item and press .


Tabs

- Menus/lists in a single window appear in separate tabs; use  to toggle tabs.




Tab

Reverse Navigation

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Returning to Standby

- Press . If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Simple Menu

- Simplify menus and enlarge fonts; ideal for users who use only basic handset functions.

Main Menu Items

Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Yahoo! Keitai	Browse the Internet
S! Appli	Use S! Applications including games
TV	Watch/record TV programs
Camera	Capture images or record video
Entertainment	Read e-Books, receive news updates, etc.
Tools	Manage schedules, set Alarm, scan QR Codes, etc.
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/Memory Card
Media Player	Play/download media files
Communication	Communicate with other users in various ways
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

Shortcuts Menu & Key Shortcut

Shortcuts Menu

Access assigned functions via Shortcuts menu.



Shortcuts Menu

- 2 Select function** ➔ ●
- Menu/window opens.

Changing Default Shortcuts

In 2, select numbered function ➔ ☺ ➔ **Assign Function** ➔ ● ➔ Select menu item ➔ ● ➔ Select new item ➔ ●

- To assign menu items, select one and press ☺.

Assigning Files & Folders

In 2, select numbered function ➔ ☺ ➔ **Assign Data** ➔ ● ➔ Select file/folder ➔ ●

- For folders, select **Set this folder** and press ●.

Key Shortcut

In Standby, Long Press ☺, ☺, or ☺ to access assigned functions.

☺	Open SI Mail Composition window
☺	Open PC Site Browser menu
☺	Create new Phone Book entries
☺	Activate/cancel Bluetooth®
☺	Activate/cancel Infrared
☺	Activate Familink Remote

Changing Assigned Functions

Follow these steps to assign Calculator to ☺:

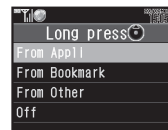
- 1** ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ●

- 2** In Phone menu, **Set Key Shortcut** ➔ ●



Key Shortcut Menu

- 3** **Long press** ☺ ➔ ●



- 4** **From Appli** ➔ ●

- 5** **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Calculator** ➔ ●

Bookmark

In 4, **From Bookmark** ➔ ● ➔ Select title ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Infrared or Show Secret Data On/Off

In 4, **From Other** ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ●

Canceling Assigned Function

In 4, **Off** ➔ ●

Advanced

● Changing item order ● Restoring default shortcuts (P.1-27)

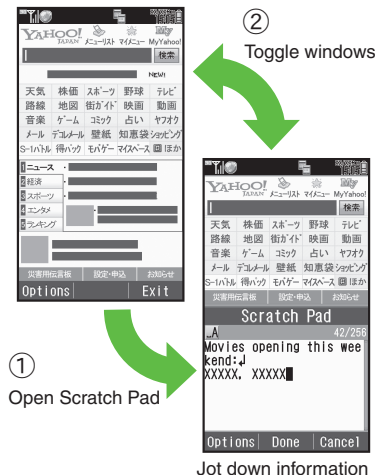
1 Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Getting Started

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

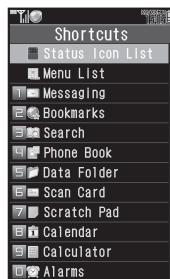
While browsing the Internet



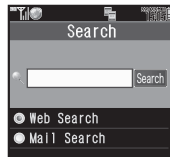
- Multi Job may not activate from some menus/windows (e.g., ringtone/ringvideo selection, etc.).
- Multi Job is disabled while (gold) appears.

Using Multi Job

- ① In a function window, .
In text entry/dial windows, Long Press .

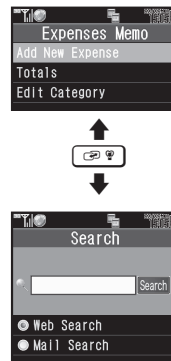


- ② Select function



- Menu/window opens.

- ③ To toggle active windows,



- ④ ➔ Multi Job ends

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Standby Shortcuts

Paste shortcuts to functions, files, folders, etc. to Standby for easy access.



Shortcuts

Saving Shortcuts to Standby

1

2 Use to select (OPEN)



Widget Tab

Standby Shortcut Tab



3



4 Select item

- Corresponding icon appears in Standby.
- >> appears when more items are available.

5 Use to specify target location

Saving from Menu/Window

- In Options menu, select **Set as StbyShortcut** (may not appear for some items); select sheet as needed.

Using Pointer ()

- After 1, Long Press to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc.
- To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press .

Using Shortcuts

1 Use to select icon



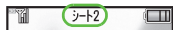
- Menu/window opens or command is executed.



Advanced

- Sorting icons ● Moving icons ● Moving icons to front/back (P.1-27)

Toggling Sheets

Toggle sheets to use Standby Shortcuts and widgets pasted on each sheet.



- To toggle further, press  or .
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save Standby Shortcuts as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.




Using Locked Sheets

 ➔ **Select**  ➔  ➔ **Enter**
Handset Code ➔ 

Removing Shortcuts from Standby



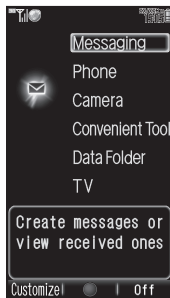
Advanced

 Removing icons at once by sheet  Editing sheet names  Locking sheets (P.1-27 - 1-28)

Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

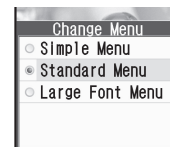
Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call VM, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	Photo Camera, Video Camera, Scan Barcode, Scan Card, Kanji Grabber, Scan Text, Review, Photo Settings, Video Settings, SetCameraKey
Convenient Tool	Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, Pedometer, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Double Number, Change Menu
Data Folder	-
TV	-

Key assignments are largely the same as those in Standard Menu.

Activating Simple Menu

1 (Long)



2 Simple Menu ➔

While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

Canceling Simple Menu

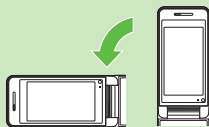
(Long) ➔ Standard Menu ➔

Motion Control

Sensor detects handset orientation or movement. Move handset to navigate pages, select files, etc.

- Cancel Keypad Lock and activate Display first. (Not necessary for activating Quick Silent.)
- Activate Motion Control by function beforehand.

Change Orientation



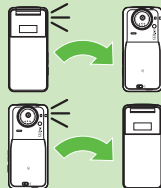
Display Change

Rotate handset 90 degrees counterclockwise and return. Display orientation changes accordingly.

Display Rotation

Digital TV
PC Site Browser
Document Viewer
Image Viewer

Turn Over



Activate Quick Silent

Turn handset over to instantly mute ringer and stop vibration.

Ringer

Incoming Calls,
Alarms, etc.

Vibration

Incoming Calls,
Alarms, etc.

- Some tones may not be silenced.

Shake Left/Right



Navigate Functions

Shake to the left to navigate back, or right to navigate forward.

Music

Music Player

Channels

Digital TV

Images

Data Folder
(Pictures)

Pages

Document
Viewer

- While Multi Job is active, active windows toggle.

Shake Forward or Backward**Zoom In/Zoom Out**

Shake forward to enlarge, or backward to reduce.

Fonts

Yahoo! Keitai
Message Window

Zoom Image

Data Folder
(Pictures)

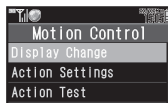
Zoom Page

PC Site Browser
Document Viewer

 toggling Motion Control On/Off

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔

2 In Phone menu, **Motion Control** ➔



Motion Control Menu

3 **Action Settings** ➔

4 **Select function** ➔

5 **On or Off** ➔

Activating Show Secret Data Temporarily

Enter Handset Code ➔ **Shake handset left or right**

- Close handset in Standby to cancel Show Secret Data.

Important Motion Control Usage Notes

- Hold/shake handset correctly to avoid unintended results.
- Motion Control may be unavailable while handset is ringing/vibrating.
- Confirm there is ample space for Motion Control use; hold handset firmly and shake it gently to avoid injury/breakage. Do not shake handset roughly; handset may slip, resulting in injury or damage.

Advanced

- Disabling Display rotation ● Practicing Motion Control actions (P.1-28)

External Display

View date/time and the following indicators with handset closed.

Activating Backlight



● Press  to toggle view.

Indicators

Basic Status



1	Signal strength*
2	Battery strength

*The more bars the better.

Notifications



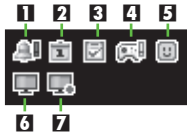
1	Missed Calls
2	Answer Phone message recorded
3	Missed Call Notification
4	New Voicemail
5	Unread mail
6	Unread Delivery Report
7	Contents Key received
8	Unread S! Information Channel info
9	Weather Indicator update
10	Location Info request
11	Pedometer target achieved

Warnings



1	Message delivery failure
2	S! Information Channel info reception failure
3	Decoration Call transmission failure
4	IP Service connection failure
5	Weather Indicator update failure

Handset Status



1	Alarm
2	Schedule Alarm
3	Task Alarm
4	S! Appli/Mobile Widget Notification
5	Unread S! Friend's Status notification
6	TV Alarm (watch)
7	TV Alarm (record)

Advanced

- Changing Backlight illumination time ● Changing Clock view ● Showing Pedometer ● Changing animation ● Changing charging window Clock view ● Hiding new received messages ● Viewing new messages ● Checking e-money balance (And more on P.1-28 - 1-29)

Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1 (Long)



- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 935SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

Canceling Manner Mode

(Long)

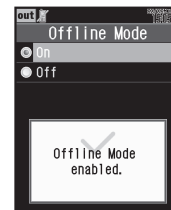
Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Network**

2 **Offline Mode** ➔

3 **On** ➔



- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode

In **Off** ➔

Advanced

-   Changing handset modes  Creating a custom mode  Resetting Mode Settings (P.1-29)

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code	9999 by default; use or change some functions
Center Access Code	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
Network Password*	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/outgoing calls (Call Barring)

*Change as needed.

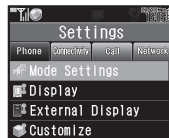
Incorrect Code Entry

- **Handset code is incorrect!** appears; try again.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Changing Handset Code

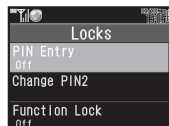
Enter four to eight digits for new Handset Code.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔



Phone Menu

2 **Locks** ➔



3 **Chg. Handset Code** ➔



4 **Enter current Handset Code** ➔



5 **Enter new Handset Code** ➔



6 **Re-enter new Handset Code** ➔

My Details & Basic Tools

My Number



- Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Editing My Details

After 1, (select tab) ➔ Select item
➔ ➔ Select item ➔ ➔ Edit ➔

VeilView

Activate VeilView to prevent peeking.



Canceling VeilView
 (Long)

Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.



- Keypad Lock activates.
- does not turn off handset power.

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

- Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.

Canceling Keypad Lock
 (Long)

Pen Light



- Mobile Light illuminates.



Important Pen Light Usage Note

- Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.

Battery Meter



Clocks/Gauges



- Approximate battery strength appears.

Battery Strength %

- 100% may not appear even when battery is full. This is by design; not a malfunction.

Phone Help



Doc./Rec.



- For **Indicators**, select category and press .

Advanced

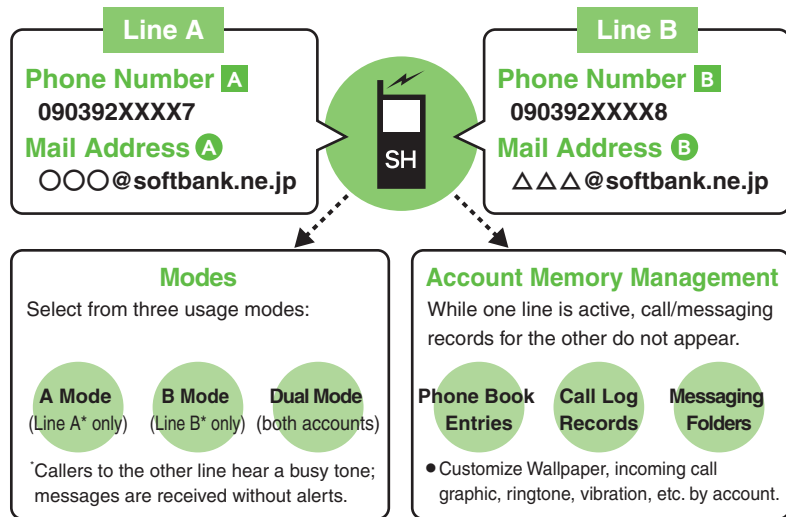
- Clearing My Details Toggling My Details in Dual Mode Changing battery strength indicator pattern Changing VeilView pattern/density (P.1-30)

Using Double Number

Manage two accounts (Line A and Line B, with separate phone numbers and mail addresses) on one handset.

- Double Number requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- While abroad, any Line B messaging charges are applied to Line A.
- For more information, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-41).

Two Phone Numbers & Two Mail Addresses



Activating Double Number

Make sure signal is stable.

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔
- 2 In Phone menu, **Double Number** ➔
- 3 **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 4 **On** ➔
- 5 **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Canceling Double Number

In ④, **Off** ➔ ➔ ⑤

- When Double Number is canceled:
 - Line B calls and SMS messages are redirected to Line A Phone Number.
 - Initial portion of Line B S! Mail is redirected to Line A. (Full messages are irretrievable.)
 - Double Number account is not affected.

Modes

Activate **A Mode** to use Line A only, **B Mode** to use Line B only, or **Dual Mode** to use both accounts.

A Mode

Receive Calls to Line A Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line A.

A Mode & B Mode Precautions

- Line indicators do not appear in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.
- When an operation affects information on the other line, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

B Mode

Receive Calls to Line B Only

- Place calls or send messages via Line B.

B Mode Restrictions

- Handset connects to the Internet via Line A. (During Internet connections, place/receive calls via Line B.)
- S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call are unavailable.

Advanced

- Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes
- Renaming Double Number modes
- Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line
- Hiding Internet connection confirmation (P.1-30)

Dual Mode

Receive Calls to Both Accounts

- Place calls or send messages via Line A (or the account of record for Phone Book entries or Call Log records) by default; toggle accounts as required.

Phone Book Entries

Specify A, B or Dual.

Messaging

Select Line A or Line B.
Sender Address changes accordingly.

Calling

Select Line A or Line B.
Caller ID changes accordingly.

- and indicate line type in Phone Book entries, message lists, Call Log records, etc.

Switching Modes

- (Long)
- Enter Handset Code ➔
- Select mode ➔
 - For **B Mode** confirmation appears.
- Yes ➔

In Dual Mode

During an operation, if prompt window below appears, select a line and press .



If customizable by line, line indicator appears bottom right; press to switch.



If line selection is otherwise required, follow onscreen prompts.

Advanced

- Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode
- Setting main line for Dual Mode (P.1-30)

USB Charge	
Disabling USB Charge	→ <i>Settings</i> → → → <i>USB Charge</i> → → <i>Disable</i> →
Information	
Handling Information list	<div> → <i>Phone</i> → → See below </div>
	<i>Opening List Manually Information</i> →
	<i>Clearing List Information</i> → → → <i>Yes</i> →
Shortcuts	
Changing item order	→ → Select numbered function → → <i>Move</i> → → Select target location →
Restoring default shortcuts	→ → Select numbered function → → <i>Set to Default</i> → → <i>Yes</i> →

Standby Shortcut

Operations in Standby

Sorting icons	→ → <i>Sort Icon</i> → → Select method → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Widgets are not affected.
Moving icons	→ Use to select icon → → <i>Operation</i> → → <i>Change Layout</i> → → Specify target location →
Moving icons to front/back	→ Use to select icon → → <i>Operation</i> → → <i>To Front or To Back</i> →
Removing icons at once by sheet	<div> → → <i>Operate from List</i> → → <i>Remove</i> → → See below </div> <p>All Icons</p> <i>Remove All</i> → → <i>Shortcut</i> → Select sheet → → <i>Yes</i> → <p>Selected Icons</p> <i>Select also Remove</i> → → <i>Shortcut</i> → Select icon → (<input type="checkbox"/> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) → Complete selection → → <i>Yes</i> →

■ Sheets

Editing sheet names	<p>Start Here (🕒) ➔ (⌂) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Sheet Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Change Sheet Name ➔ (⚙️) ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Renaming Select sheet ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Enter name ➔ (⚙️)</p>
Locking sheets	<p>Resetting All Sheet Names (⌂) ➔ Yes ➔ (⚙️)</p>
	<p>Start Here (🕒) ➔ (⌂) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Sheet Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Set Sheet Lock ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ (⚙️) ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Activating Lock Select sheet ➔ (⚙️) ➔ On ➔ (⚙️)</p>
	<p>Changing Method for Temporary Access Unlock Method ➔ (⚙️) ➔ No Password ➔ (⚙️)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press (🕒), then select (🔒) and press (⚙️) to unlock sheet temporarily.

Motion Control

Disabling Display rotation	<p>(⚙️) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ In Phone menu, Motion Control ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Display Change ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select function ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Off ➔ (⚙️)</p>
Practicing Motion Control actions	<p>(⚙️) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ In Phone menu, Motion Control ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Action Test ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select item ➔ (⚙️)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.

External Display

■ View Settings

Changing Backlight illumination time	<p>(⚙️) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ In Phone menu, External Display ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Lighting Time ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select time ➔ (⚙️)</p>
Changing Clock view	<p>Start Here (🕒) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ In Phone menu, External Display ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Display Date&Time ➔ (⚙️) ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Selecting Pattern Clock Pattern ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select pattern ➔ (⚙️)</p>
	<p>Selecting Font Digital Clock Type ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select pattern ➔ (⚙️)</p>
	<p>Selecting Color Digital Clock Color ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select color ➔ (⚙️)</p>
	<p>Using Customized Screen Digital Clock Color ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Custom Screen ➔ (⚙️)</p>
Showing Pedometer	<p>(⚙️) ➔ Settings ➔ (⚙️) ➔ In Phone menu, External Display ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Pedometer ➔ (⚙️) ➔ Select item ➔ (⚙️)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate Backlight and press (🔒). Some items do not appear if body information entry is incomplete.

Changing animation	Start Here \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, External Display \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Animation \Rightarrow \Rightarrow See below
	Changing Pattern Select pattern \Rightarrow
	Disabling Off \Rightarrow
Changing charging window Clock view	\Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, External Display \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Charging Time \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Horizontal \Rightarrow

■ Handset Response

Hiding new received messages	\Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, External Display \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Messages \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Off \Rightarrow
Hiding caller info	\Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, External Display \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Caller Display \Rightarrow Off \Rightarrow
Hiding Phone Book Categories for incoming calls	\Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, External Display \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Call Groups View \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Off \Rightarrow
Selecting images for incoming calls, etc.	Start Here \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, External Display \Rightarrow \Rightarrow System Graphics \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select item \Rightarrow \Rightarrow See below • Customized Screens may be unselectable depending on item.
	Preset Graphics Select pattern \Rightarrow
	Customized Screen Customized Screen \Rightarrow

■ Operations

Viewing new messages	With Backlight off, \Rightarrow • Use to scroll message text; press to view next messages. • Available with handset closed.
Checking e-money balance	With handset closed, (Long) \Rightarrow Balance appears \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Balance disappears • Use to view balances of listed entries. • Save Lifestyle-App1 to Balance Info list beforehand. • Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.

Mode

Changing handset modes	Start Here \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, Mode Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow See below
	Selecting a Handset Mode Select mode \Rightarrow
	Customizing Handset Modes Select mode \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select item \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Adjust settings • Not available for Normal mode.
Creating a custom mode	\Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, Mode Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Original \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select item \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Adjust settings
Resetting Mode Settings	\Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow In Phone menu, Mode Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select mode \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter Handset Code \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Yes \Rightarrow

My Details

Clearing My Details	→ → → → <i>Reset My Details</i> → →
Toggling My Details in Dual Mode	→ → → → <i>Switch to B or Switch to A</i> →

Battery Meter

Changing battery strength indicator pattern	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Display</i> → → <i>Mini Battery</i> → → <i>Select pattern</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Clock & Battery level, indicators appear in turn. To change interval, press . For Battery level, approximate battery strength appears as a percentage.
---	--

VeilView

Changing VeilView pattern/density	<div> → <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Display</i> → → <i>VeilView</i> → → See below </div> <div> Pattern <i>Pattern Setting</i> → → <i>Select pattern</i> → → <i>Select scale or Animation</i> → </div> <div> Density <i>Density Setting</i> → → <i>Select density</i> → </div>
-----------------------------------	--

Double Number

All Modes

Omitting Handset Code entry when switching modes	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → → <i>Password Entry</i> → → <i>Off</i> → → <i>Enter Handset Code</i> →
Renaming Double Number modes	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → → <i>Mode Name</i> → → <i>Select mode</i> → → <i>Enter name</i> → → <i>Select icon</i> →

A Mode & B Mode

Showing indicator for calls missed or new mail on idle line	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → → <i>Show Missed</i> → → <i>On</i> →
Hiding Internet connection confirmation	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → → <i>Packet Warning</i> → → <i>Off</i> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for B Mode.

Dual Mode

Rejecting calls to either line in Dual Mode	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → → <i>Reject By Line</i> → → <i>Select line</i> → → <i>On</i> →
Setting main line for Dual Mode	→ <i>Settings</i> → → In Phone menu, <i>Double Number</i> → → <i>Send Priority</i> → → <i>Select option</i> →

Font Size	2-2
Changing Font Size	2-2
Wallpaper	2-3
Customized Screen & S! Familiar	
Usability	2-4
Customized Screen & S! Familiar	
Usability (Japanese)	2-4
Sounds & Alerts	2-5
Customizing Handset Responses ...	2-5
Text Entry	2-6
Entering Characters	2-7
Editing Characters	2-10

User Dictionary	2-11
Saving Frequently Used Words	2-11
Dictionary	2-12
Using Dictionaries (Japanese)	2-12
Search	2-14
Searching Text	2-14
Scratch Pad	2-15
Phone Book	2-16
Creating Phone Book Entries	2-16
Using Phone Book Entries	2-18
Additional Functions	2-19
Troubleshooting	2-24

2

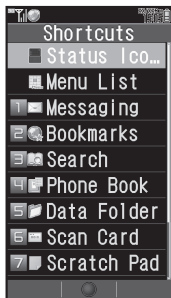
Basic Operations



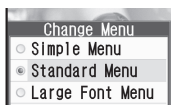
Changing Font Size

Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



1 (Long)



2 Large Font Menu

Canceling Large Font Menu

In 2, Standard Menu

Customizing Font Sizes

1 Settings



2 In Phone menu, Display

3 Font Settings



Font Settings Menu

4 Font Size Select item

5 Select size

Changing Font Weight

1 In Font Settings menu, Font Weight



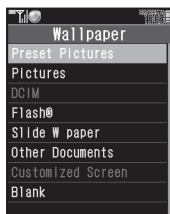
2 Select weight



Wallpaper

1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Display**

2 **Wallpaper**



Wallpaper Menu

3 **Select folder**

4 **Select file**

- Some files may not be usable.
- Omit the next step when **Preset Pictures** is selected in 3.

5

Selecting Images Smaller or Larger than Display

After 4, select option

- For **Centered**, use to zoom in/out or press to rotate.

Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps:

Yes

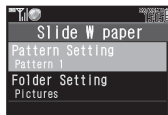
If Double Number Mode Menu Opens

Select mode

Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby.
Some images may not appear.

1 **In Wallpaper menu, Slide W paper**



2 **Folder Setting**

3 **Pictures or DCIM**

4 **Select sub folder** **Set this folder**

- Omit steps for sub folder if none.

If There is No Image in Set Folder

- Preset images appear.

Using Preset Images

In 3, **Preset Pictures**

Changing Pattern

In 2, **Pattern Setting** **Select pattern**

- To check patterns, select one and press .



Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)

Preset Customized Screens

1   


2 **Customized Screen**  

3 **Preset Screens**  

4 **Select pattern**  

5   

When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after ④.
To cancel, choose **Yes** and press .

Downloading Customized Screens

Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

1   **Data Folder**   **Customized Screen**  





Customized Screen Menu

2 **Download Customized Screen**  





- Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup

1 **In Customized Screen menu, select Customized Screen**  



2   

Applying Fee-based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
After ①,   **Yes**  
■ Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.




S! Familiar Usability

Download and install Customized Screens that load legacy model interfaces.

1 **In Customized Screen menu, S! Familiar Usability**  
• Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Familiar Usability Setup











- Follow these steps to install downloaded S! Familiar Usability (if not installed immediately after download):

[Customized Screen Menu] Select Customized Screen for S! Familiar Usability   

Canceling Temporarily

    **通常メニュー**  

Advanced

-   Canceling Customized Screen
-   Canceling S! Familiar Usability
-   Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability unconditionally
-   Deleting Customized Screens
-   Accessing Customized Screen source sites (P.2-19)



Customizing Handset Responses

2

Basic Operations

Ringtone

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **In Phone menu, Sounds & Alerts** ➔



Sounds & Alerts Menu

- 2 **Ringtone/videos** ➔

- 3 **Select item** ➔

For **For New Message**, etc., select **Assign Tone** and press .



- 4 **Select folder** ➔

- 5 **Select tone/file** ➔

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.
 After , **Duration** ➔ ➔ **Enter time** ➔

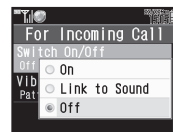
Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions
 In 4, **Videos** ➔ ➔ **Select file** ➔

If Portion of File Content is Specifiable
 • After , start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:
Select start point ➔

Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period
 • A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press to proceed.

Vibration

- 1 In **Sounds & Alerts** menu, **Vibration** ➔
- 2 **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔



- 3 **On** ➔

- 4 **Vibration Pattern** ➔

• To check vibration patterns, select one and press .

- 5 **Select pattern** ➔

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration
 In , **Link to Sound** ➔

Precaution

• Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.



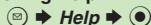
Text Entry

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.



Text Entry Window (Message Text)

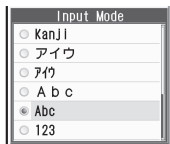
Opening Help



Note

- Pressing repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

Switching Entry Modes



- Available entry modes appear.



- Entry Mode Indicators:

	Kanji (hiragana)
	Double/single-byte katakana
	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
	Single-byte number
	Character Code

appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle character options for that key.

Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press three times.



- Press to toggle options in reverse.

To type characters assigned to the same key, press first.

Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.



- Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.



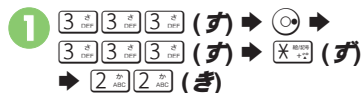
Advanced

- Using Character Codes
- Using Pager Code (P.2-19)

Entering Characters

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter すずき in kanji (hiragana) mode:



2 (Confirm)

Kanji

Convert すずき to 鈴木.

1 Type すずき



- In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana is typed. (Predictive)
- Press (☺) to toggle suggestion mode between Standard, Business, Male, Female and Automatic. (Personal Mode)

2



3 鈴木

- To exit suggestion list, press (ABC=).

4



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press (☺) or (☹) to segment hiragana to convert separately.
 - Press (☹) to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

Phonetic Conversion

Type reading in hiragana ➔ (☺)

Advanced

- Inserting line breaks
- Inserting spaces
- Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list
- Clearing entry log
- Changing Font Size
- Disabling suggestions based on entered characters
- Disabling suggestions based on entered words
- Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words
- Lowering type priorities in suggestion list
- Selecting a suggestion mode (P.2-19 - 2-20)



One-Hiragana Conversion

Type the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: **ず** was previously converted to **鈴木**.

1 [3] [3] [3] (ず) ➔ ?

2 Select word/phrase ➔ ●

Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter **ジュン**.

1 [0] [0] ➔ アイウ ➔ ●



2 [3] [3] (シ) ➔ [X] (シ) ➔ [8] [8] (ユ) ➔ [R] (ユ) ➔ [0] [0] (ン) ➔ ●



Pictograms & Symbols

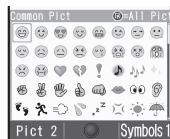
May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1 [X] [RECALL] ➔



• Pictogram/Symbol Log appears.

2 [0] or [Y] ➔ List toggles



• In Pictogram List, press [0] to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.

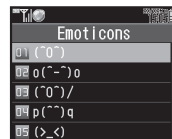
3 Select Pictogram or Symbol ➔ ●

• Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.

4 [CLEAR] [BACK] ➔ List closes

Emoticons

1 [0] ➔ Emoticons ➔ ●



2 Select emoticon ➔ ●

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

• In kanji (hiragana) mode, type **かお** or a descriptive word such as **かーい** or **うーん**, then convert the entry.

EmoticonWordLink

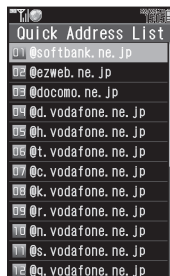
• Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.



Mail & Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

1 [Envelope Icon] ➔ **Quick Addr. List** ➔ [OK Icon]



2 **Select extension** ➔ [OK Icon]

- Extensions are single-byte entry even in double-byte entry modes.

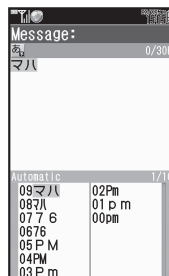
Hiragana to Katakana/
Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter **PM**

Use key inscriptions.

1 [7] [P] [6] [M] ➔ [PM]



2 **Select word/phrase (PM)** ➔ [OK Icon]

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter **終電**

1 [3] [さ] ➔ [8] [や]
➔ [1] [あ] ➔ [4] [だ]
➔ [0] [か] ➔ [End]



2 **Select word/phrase (終電)** ➔ [OK Icon]

One Hiragana Word Call

- Type the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press [End].



Editing Characters

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct **また、お願いします** to **また明日お願いします**.

1 Select character

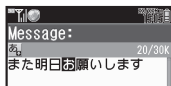


2



- The highlighted character is deleted.

3 Select target location → Enter characters



Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character after deletion.

Deleting All Text

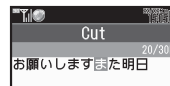
- Long Press at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press .

Jumping to the End or Top of Text

- **Cursor Position** → → **Jump to End or Jump to Top** →

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 → **Cut or Copy** → → **Select first character** →

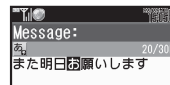


Cut

- To cancel and start over, press .

2 Highlight text range →

3 (Long)



- Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

Select target location → → **Paste**

→ → **Select text** →

- Available when Paste List appears.

Advanced

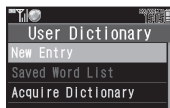
- Undo conversion or recover deleted characters
- Inserting Phone Book entry items (P.2-19)

Saving Frequently Used Words

Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ In Phone menu, **User Dictionary** ➔



User Dictionary Menu

- 2 **New Entry** ➔ ➔ Enter word ➔

- 3 Enter reading ➔

Editing Entries

- In , **Saved Word List** ➔ ➔
 Select word ➔ ➔ Edit ➔ ➔
 Edit reading ➔ ➔ Yes ➔

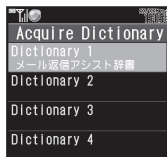
935SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Get specialized 935SH Download Dictionaries via SH-web Mobile Internet site ([シャブ・メーカ サイト](#) SH-web in Bookmarks; see P.5-7).

Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.

Some dictionary files may not be usable.

- 1 In User Dictionary menu, **Acquire Dictionary** ➔



- 2 **Select number** ➔ ➔ **Select dictionary** ➔

- Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary

In , select dictionary ➔ ➔

Cancel ➔

Viewing Dictionary Information

In , select dictionary ➔ ➔ **Info** ➔

Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words in suggestion list.
- Effective in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Advanced

- Deleting entries (P.2-20)



Using Dictionaries (Japanese)

Available Dictionaries:

Preloaded Dictionaries*	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary, Genius English-Japanese Dictionary, Genius Japanese-English Dictionary
Online Dictionaries	Meikyo J-Dic MX.net, Genius EJ-Dic MX.net, Genius JE-Dic MX.net, Imidas Encyclopedia, Encyclopedia Nipponica, Digital Daijisen, PROGRESSIVE English-Japanese Dictionary, PROGRESSIVE Japanese-English Dictionary, Hot Pepper Pockets, Amazon.co.jp

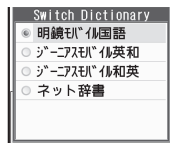
*Download and add dictionaries as needed.

Online Dictionaries

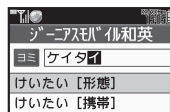
- Online dictionary use requires Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply. Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.
- Update dictionary list for most recent versions.

Using Preloaded Dictionaries

Searching As-You-Type



- Last used dictionary appears first.



- Enter reading in katakana.
- Search results appear as you type.



Definition/Translation Window

Looking Up in Online Dictionaries

[Definition/Translation Window] ⓘ

➔ **WebDict.Search** ➔ ●

- Perform from ② (except ④) in "Using Online Dictionaries" on P.2-13. (Read bulleted sentence in ① beforehand.)

Searching by Keyword



- Definition/translation window opens.

Advanced

- Changing Font Size
- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Viewing dictionary information
- Updating dictionary list (And more on P.2-20)



Copying Text

Selected Portions

- 1 In definition/translation window,
- 2 Select first character
 Highlight text range

Index Word Only

- 1 In definition/translation window,
- 2 Copy Index Word

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

- 1 In Dictionary window,
- 2 Add Dictionary
- 3 Select file

Canceling Added Dictionary

In , Cancel Dictionary Yes

Using Online Dictionaries

- 1 In Dictionary window,
ネット辞書
 - Terms of service (Japanese) appear when using online dictionary for the first time; read and then press .
- 2 Select pull-down menu
- 3 Select dictionary
 - Select **すべて** to look up in all dictionaries at once.
- 4 Select entry field
Enter text
- 5 Search
- 6 Yes
- 7 Select word, etc.
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Disabling Confirmation

After , (☐ ☒) From

Viewing Dictionary Information

After , select word, etc.
Reference Yes

Using History & Bookmarks

Saving Bookmarks

- 1 In definition/translation window,
 - 2 Bookmark
- Opening History or Bookmarks
- 1 In Dictionary window,
 - 2 History or Bookmark List
 - 3 Select word, etc.
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry

- 1 Type text Before pressing to complete entry,
- 2 Select dictionary
- 3 Search Select word, etc.
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Inserting Index Word into Text

After , Paste Index Word

Advanced

Deleting History & bookmarks Selecting dictionaries for use Selecting search method Selecting search area (And more on P.2-20 - 2-21)



Searching Text

Web Search

Transmission fees apply.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec.**

2 **Search** ➔



Search Window

- **Web Search** is selected by default.

3 **Select entry field** ➔ ➔ **Enter search text** ➔

4 **Search** ➔

- Search results appear.

Searching within PC Sites

[Search Window] ➔ **Change Browser**

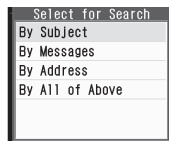
➔ ➔ **PC Site Browser** ➔

Mail Search

1 **In Search window, Mail Search** ➔

2 **Select entry field** ➔ ➔ **Enter search text** ➔

3 **Search** ➔



4 **Select option** ➔

Searching within Received or Sent Messages

[Search Window] ➔ **Change Mail Folder** ➔ ➔ **Received Messages or Sent Messages** ➔



Scratch Pad

Open Scratch Pad to jot down text, and more.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔

Doc./Rec.

2 **Scratch Pad** ➔

- Text entry window opens.

3 **Enter text** ➔



4 **Save to Notepad** ➔

- Open saved entries from Notepad.

Other Scratch Pad Usage

Usage	Operation
Paste to Standby	Set as StbyShortcut ➔ ➔ Select sheet ➔
Enter Mail Message Text	Create Message ➔ ➔ Select mail type ➔
Enter Schedule Subject/Details	Save to Calendar ➔
Enter Task Subject/Details	Save to Tasks ➔
Add Last Name to Phone Book	Save to Phone Book ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Reading is not entered.
Save Text File	Save as Text File ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Save here ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Saved to Data Folder (Other Documents).
Search Internet	Web Search ➔ ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select browser ➔

For more, see corresponding function description or follow onscreen instructions.



Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1 **Phone** **Add New Entry**

2 **Last Name:** **Enter last name** **First Name:** **Enter first name**

- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3 **Add Phone Number:** **Enter phone number** **Select type**

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

4 **Add Email Address:** **Enter mail address** **Select type**

- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

5 **Category:** **Select Category**

Phone Book Entry Window

6 **Entry is saved to Phone Book.**

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Selecting Mode in Dual Mode

[Phone Book Entry Window] Mode:

Select mode

Advanced

- Saving other information
- Setting Light Color
- Changing vibration pattern
- Editing Phone Book entries
- Setting incoming mail ring time
- Renaming Categories
- Moving Categories (P.2-21 - 2-22)



Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, select item, e.g., **Tone-Voice Call:** ➔ ●



- 2 **Assign Tone** ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ●

- 3 Select tone/file ➔ ●

Saving Secret Entries

Hide Phone Book entries to require Handset Code for access.

- 1 In Phone Book entry window, **Secret:** ➔ ●

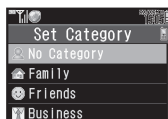
- 2 **On** ➔ ●

Accessing Secret Entries

- ➔ ● ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ ●
- ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ●

Customizing Response by Category

- 1 ● ➔ **Phone** ➔ ● ➔ **Set Category** ➔ ●



Set Category Menu

- 2 **Select Category** ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ●
- 3 Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select item, e.g., **Assign Tone** ➔ ● ➔ **Customize responses** ➔ ●

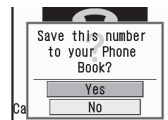
- Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
- Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

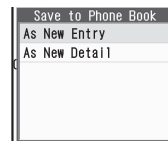
- Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



- 1 When confirmation appears, **Yes** ➔ ●



- 2 **As New Entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Complete other fields** ➔ ●

Saving to an Existing Entry

- In 2, **As New Detail** ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ **Complete other fields** ➔ ●



Using Phone Book Entries

Dialing via Phone Book

- 1 Select katakana row



Entry Search Window (By あかさたな)

- When using Double Number in Dual Mode, Line indicators appear.

- 2 Select entry



Entry Details

- 3 Select phone number

- 4

Placing Video Calls

After , Video Call

Advanced

- Changing view for entry search window
- Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions
- Messaging via Phone Book
- Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book
- Deleting Phone Book entries
- Checking memory status
- Copying Phone Book entries (And more on P.2-21 - 2-23)

Changing Search Method

- 1 In entry search window, Ph.Book Settings

- 2 Sort Entries



- 3 Select method

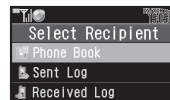
- Phone Book Search Methods:

By あかさたな	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] (press to toggle search methods)

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

- 1 Phone Book
- Entry search window opens.

- 2 Select entry

- 3 Select phone number or mail address



- Recipient is entered.
- Omit if only one number or address is saved.



■ Conversion

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	In a text entry window, ☰ ➔ Input/Conversion ➔ ● ➔ Predictive ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ☰ ➔ Input/Conversion ➔ ● ➔ Previous Usage ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	In a text entry window, ☰ ➔ Input/Conversion ➔ ● ➔ EmoticonWordLink ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	In a text entry window, ☰ ➔ Input/Conversion ➔ ● ➔ Set Low Priority ➔ ● ➔ Select type ➔ ● (✓) ➔ ▽
Selecting a suggestion mode	In a text entry window, ☰ ➔ Input/Conversion ➔ ● ➔ Personal Mode ➔ ● ➔ Select mode ➔ ●

User Dictionary

Deleting entries	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, User Dictionary ➔ ● ➔ Saved Word List ➔ ● ➔ Select word ➔ ☰ ➔ Yes ➔ ●
------------------	--

Dictionary

■ Preloaded & Online Dictionaries

Changing Font Size	辞書 ➔ ☰ ➔ Font Size ➔ ● ➔ Select size ➔ ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	After copying text, 辞書 ➔ ☰ ➔ Search by Copied Text ➔ ● ➔ Search ➔ ● ➔ Select word, etc. ➔ ●

Deleting History & bookmarks

Start Here **辞書** ➔ **☰** ➔ **History, History List or Bookmark List** ➔ **●** ➔ **See below**

One Word

Select word ➔ **☰** ➔ **Delete** ➔ **●** ➔ **Yes** ➔ **●**

All Words

☰ ➔ **Delete All** ➔ **●** ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **●** ➔ **Yes** ➔ **●**

Looking up scanned kanji in dictionaries

辞書 ➔ **☰** ➔ **Kanji Grabber** ➔ **●** ➔ **Frame kanji in Loupe** ➔ **●** ➔ **Search** ➔ **●** ➔ **Select word, etc.** ➔ **●**
 • Definition/translation window opens.

Looking up scanned text in dictionaries

辞書 ➔ **☰** ➔ **Scan Text** ➔ **●** ➔ **Frame text in center of Display** ➔ **●** ➔ **Select line** ➔ **●** ➔ **Search** ➔ **●** ➔ **Select word, etc.** ➔ **●**
 • Definition/translation window opens.

■ Preloaded Dictionaries

Viewing dictionary information

辞書 ➔ **☰** ➔ **Information** ➔ **●**

■ Online Dictionaries

Updating dictionary list	辞書 ➔ ▽ ➔ ネット辞書 ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Update Dictionaries ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
Selecting dictionaries for use	辞書 ➔ ▽ ➔ ネット辞書 ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Edit Dict. List ➔ ● ➔ Select dictionary ➔ ● (☐/✓) ➔ ▽
Selecting search method	辞書 ➔ ▽ ➔ ネット辞書 ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Set Search Method ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Selecting search area	辞書 ➔ ▽ ➔ ネット辞書 ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ Set Search Area ➔ ● ➔ Select area ➔ ●







Opening terms of service	辞書 ① ➡ ヲ ➡ ネット辞書 ➡ ② ➡ ③ ➡ Terms of service ➡ ④ ● Press ④ to return to Dictionary window.
Opening Help	辞書 ① ➡ ヲ ➡ ネット辞書 ➡ ② ➡ Select pull-down menu ➡ ③ ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ④ ➡ ⑤ ➡ Help ➡ ⑥ ➡ Yes ➡ ⑦

Phone Book

View Settings

Changing view for entry search window	① ➡ Phone ➡ ② ➡ Ph.Book Settings ➡ ③ ➡ View Settings ➡ ④ ➡ List Only ➡ ⑤
Assigning images to Phone Book entries for incoming transmissions	Start Here ① ➡ Phone ➡ ② ➡ Add New Entry ➡ ③ ➡ Picture: ➡ ④ ➡ See below Assigning Images Assign Picture ➡ ⑤ ➡ Select image ➡ ⑥ Capturing Images Take Picture ➡ ⑦ ➡ Frame image on Display ➡ ⑧ ➡ ⑨
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	① ➡ Phone ➡ ② ➡ Ph.Book Settings ➡ ③ ➡ New Number Prompt ➡ ④ ➡ Incoming Call or Outgoing Call ➡ ⑤ ➡ Off ➡ ⑥

Phone Book Entry

Saving other information	<p>Start Here ● ➞ Phone ➞ ● ➞ Add New Entry ➞ ● ➞ See below</p> <p>Address</p> <p>Address: ➞ ● ➞ Select item ➞ ● ➞ Complete field ➞ ● ➞ ㄣ</p> <p>Office</p> <p>Office: ➞ ● ➞ Select item ➞ ● ➞ Enter text ➞ ● ➞ ㄣ</p> <p>Homepage</p> <p>Homepage: ➞ ● ➞ Enter URL ➞ ● ➞ Select type ➞ ●</p> <p>Note</p> <p>Note: ➞ ● ➞ Enter text ➞ ●</p> <p>Birthday</p> <p>Birthday: ➞ ● ➞ Enter date ➞ ●</p>
	<p>Start Here ● ➞ Phone ➞ ● ➞ Add New Entry ➞ ● ➞ Select item, e.g., <i>Light-Voice Call</i>: ➞ ● ➞ Switch On/Off ➞ ● ➞ See below</p> <p>Changing Color</p> <p>On ➞ ● ➞ Light Color ➞ ● ➞ Select color ➞ ● ➞ </p> <p>Setting Ringtones to Control Light</p> <p>Link to Sound ➞ ● ➞ ● ➞ ● ➞ </p> <p>Disabling</p> <p>Off ➞ ● ➞ ➞ </p>
	<p>● ➞ Phone ➞ ● ➞ Add New Entry ➞ ● ➞ Select item, e.g., <i>Vibration-Message</i>: ➞ ● ➞ Switch On/Off ➞ ● ➞ Select option ➞ ● ➞ Vibration Pattern ➞ ● ➞ Select pattern ➞ ● ➞ </p>



Editing Phone Book entries	<p>☎ → Select entry → ☰ → Edit → ● → Select item → ● → Edit → ● → ☑</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Edit Reading after editing names.
Setting incoming mail ring time	<p>☎ → Select entry → ☰ → Edit → ● → Tone-New Message: → ● → Duration → ● → Enter time → ● → ☑</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for compatible ringtones.
Renaming Categories	<p>● → Phone → ● → Set Category → ● → Select Category → ● → Edit Name → ● → Enter name → ●</p>
Moving Categories	<p>● → Phone → ● → Set Category → ● → Select Category → ☑ → Select target location → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> View for <i>By Category</i> Phone Book search changes accordingly.

■ Using Entries

Messaging via Phone Book	<p>Start Here ☎ → Select entry → ● → See below</p>
	<p>Phone Numbers Select phone number → ● → Create Message → ● → S! Mail or SMS → ● → Complete message → ☑</p>
Placing Decoration Calls via Phone Book	<p>Mail Addresses Select mail address → ● → Complete message → ☑</p>
	<p>☎ → Select entry → ● → Select phone number → ● → Deco. Call → ● → Deco. Call File → ● → Deco. Call Folder → ● → Select file → ● → Call Type → ● → Voice Call or Video Call → ● → ☑</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When placing a Decoration Call for the first time, follow onscreen prompt.
Initiating S! Circle Talk via Phone Book	<p>☎ → Select entry → ● → Select phone number → ● → Call S! Circle Talk → ● → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Set Connection status to Online first.

Placing international calls via Phone Book	<p>☎ → Select entry → ● → Select phone number → ● → Int'l Call → ● → Select country → ● → ☑</p>
--	---

■ Managing Entries

Deleting Phone Book entries	<p>One Entry ☎ → Select entry → ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>All Entries ● → Phone → ● → Manage Entries → ● → Delete All → ● → Select entry type → ● → Yes → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●</p>
Checking memory status	<p>● → Phone → ● → Manage Entries → ● → Memory Status → ●</p>
Copying Phone Book entries	<p>One Entry (Handset → USIM Card) ☎ → Select entry → ☰ → Manage Entries → ● → Copy Entry to USIM → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>One Entry (USIM Card → Handset) ☎ → ☰ → Ph.Book Settings → ● → Select Phone Book → ● → USIM Memory → ● → Select entry → ☰ → Manage Entries → ● → Copy Entry to Phone → ●</p>
	<p>All Entries ☎ → ☰ → Manage Entries → ● → Copy All → ● → Select method → ● → Yes → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If handset/USIM Card memory is low, some entries may not be copied.



Editing Categories on USIM Card	Start Here → Phone → Set Category → Change to USIM → See below
	Renaming Categories Select Category → Edit Name → Enter name
	Moving Categories Select Category → Select target location
	Changing Icons Select Category → Change Icon → Select Pictogram
Changing default storage media for new entries	Phone → Ph.Book Settings → Save New Entry → USIM Memory or Ask Each Time
Switching reference Phone Book	Phone → Ph.Book Settings → Select Phone Book → USIM Memory or Both

Mode Settings

Activate Double Number first.

Changing modes of all entries at once	Phone → Manage Entries → Change Mode(All) → Select mode → Enter Handset Code
Changing modes of multiple entries	Manage Entries → Multiple Selection → Select entry → (✓/□) → Change Mode → Select mode
Changing modes of entries by Category	Select Category → Manage Entries → Change Mode(Category) → Select mode → Enter Handset Code • Set search method to By Category first.



Customized Screen

? Customized Screen is not applied

- Some Customized Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.

Phone Book

? Assigned images do not appear for incoming transmissions

- Source files may be deleted or moved to Memory Card; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Images do not appear if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Images do not appear for incoming Decoration Calls including image/video.
- Images may not appear when another function is active, etc.

? Handset does not ring for incoming transmissions as set

- Source files may be deleted; reassign files.
- When using copy protected files, etc., confirm that source file license/usage period has not expired.
- Ringtone/ringvideo settings are disabled if corresponding Phone Book entry is set to Secret.
- Ringtones do not sound for incoming Decoration Calls with sound.
- Memory Card with source files may be removed; reinsert the card to restore settings.

? Cannot enter 16 characters for Category names

- Character entry limit for Category names may be lower depending on the USIM Card in use.



Emergency Calls	3-2
Voice Calling	3-3
Video Calling	3-5
Decoration Call.....	3-6
Speed Dial.....	3-7
Call Log.....	3-8
Call Time	3-9

Call Barring	3-10
Restrict Destinations	3-10
Reject Numbers.....	3-11
Optional Services	3-12
Additional Functions	3-14
Troubleshooting.....	3-21

3

Calling



Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)

935SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Location Information is not reported during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

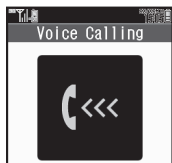
Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Function Lock	Possible
Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode	Restricted
Keypad Lock	
PIN Entry	



Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window

1 to accept the call

- Call connects.

2 ➔ Call ends

Muting Ringer Temporarily

When a call arrives,

Earpiece Volume

During a call, or

After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Voice Call

1 Enter phone number with area code

- To correct entry, use to place cursor under the digit and press . To delete the digits above and after the cursor, Long Press .

2

- Wait for connection.



3 ➔ Call ends

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

- After 1, ➔ Select Line(Voice) ➔
 ➔ Select line ➔

Placing an International Call

1 Enter phone number with area code ➔

2 Int'l Call ➔



3 Select country ➔ ➔

- Handset dials the number.

4 ➔ Call ends

Calling Unlisted Countries

- In , Enter Code ➔ ➔ Enter country code ➔ ➔

Advanced

- Rejecting calls ● Placing calls on hold ● Answering with Headphones ● Adjusting Earpiece Volume ● Sending/blocking Caller ID ● Muting Microphone
- Recording caller voice ● Opening messages (And more on P.3-14 - 3-16)
- Answering calls automatically when using Headphones (P.3-20)



Placing Calls while Abroad

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand. See SoftBank Mobile Website for details: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/ Access roaming area/rate information or print it out to carry with you while traveling abroad.

1 Enter phone number with area code ➡

2 Int'l Call ➡ ➡ ➡

- Handset dials the number.

3 ➡ Call ends

Calling SoftBank Handsets

- In , always select (JPN).

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

- Perform steps in "Placing a Voice Call" on P.3-3.

Calls Overseas

- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1 (Long)

- Answer Phone is set (appears).

Canceling Answer Phone

(Long)

Answering Calls while Recording



- No message will be recorded.

Playing Messages

1

2 Select record ➡

- Playback stops automatically at the end of message.

Deleting All Records

After 1, ➡ Delete All ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ➡ Yes ➡

Playback Operations

Volume Control	or
Replay/Skip Backward	
Stop	
Skip Forward	
Delete	➡ Yes ➡
Loudspeaker On/Off	

Advanced

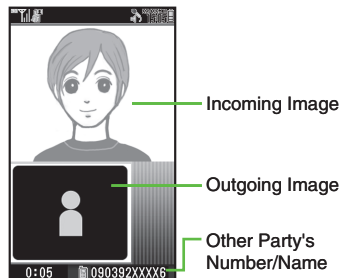
- Recording caller messages
- Changing ring time
- Sampling outgoing message
- Muting Earpiece (P.3-14)
- Placing calls by entering country code directly
- Adding a country code automatically when placing calls
- Adding/changing/deleting country codes (And more on P.3-15)



Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Handle Video Calls like Voice Calls. This page describes functions/operations unique to Video Call.

Window Description



Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Video Calls cannot be placed while TV is active.

Advanced

- Answering Video Calls automatically (And more on P.3-14)
- Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness ● Sending External Camera image when initiating Video Calls ● Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls ● Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls (And more on P.3-16 - 3-20)

Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

- 1 **to accept the call**
 - Alternative Image is sent. (Video Call charges apply to the caller.)

- 2 **Call ends**

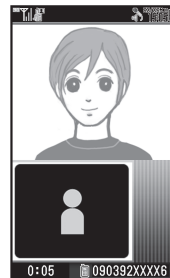
Answering with External Camera Image
[Incoming Video Call Window]
No

Engaged Video Call Operations

Toggle View	
Toggle Outgoing Image	
Open Help	Help

Placing a Video Call

- 1 Enter phone number
- 2 Video Call



- Call is accepted and image appears.

- 3 **Call ends**

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

After 1, **Select Line(Video)**
Select line



Decoration Call

Show decorative message in incoming call windows on recipient's handset.

- Available without a separate contract.
- Recipient's handset must be Decoration Call-compatible.
- Charges apply to the caller when Decoration Call is placed successfully.

Answering a Decoration Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Decoration Call Window

If Softkeys do not appear, handle incoming Decoration Call like any other call.

1 to accept the call

- Call connects.

2 ➔ Call ends

- Open/save Decoration Call files from received call records.

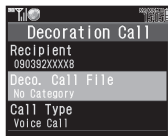
Note

- Decoration Call file may not play depending on recipient handset settings.

Placing a Decoration Call

Follow these steps to place a Decoration Call by entering a phone number:

1 Enter phone number ➔ ➔ *Deco. Call* ➔



2 *Deco. Call File* ➔

3 *Deco. Call Folder* ➔ ➔ *Select file* ➔



- To check selected file, press .

4



- Handset dials the number. (It may take some time.)

5 ➔ Call ends


Placing Your First Decoration Call

- A confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.
 - To show confirmation next time as well, press  (.

Placing Decoration Video Calls

After , *Call Type* ➔  ➔ *Video Call* ➔  ➔ 4

Advanced

-  Creating Decoration Call files
- Editing Decoration Call files
- Saving received Decoration Call files
- Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls
- Hiding incoming Decoration Call window
- Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files
- Showing options upon Decoration Call failure (P.3-16 - 3-17)



Speed Dial

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔
- 2 **Speed Dial/Mail** ➔
- 3 **Select number** ➔ ➔ **Select entry** ➔
- 4 **Select phone number** ➔



- Select mail address prompt appears. To save mail address for easy messaging, select one and press . (Omit .)

- 5 **Do not Assign** ➔

6 ➔ Saved

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat - .

Using Headphones for Speed Dial

- Save a phone number to .

Canceling Speed Dial Entries

In , select entry ➔ ➔ **Remove Selected or Remove All** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

Using Speed Dial

- 1 - (entry number)

- 2

Placing Video Calls

In , ➔ **Speed Video** ➔

Placing Decoration Calls

In , ➔ **Speed Deco. Call** ➔
 ➔ **Deco. Call File** ➔ ➔ **Select/**
create file ➔

Using Headphones

- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in . To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.



Call Log


Open recent dialed/received call records.

3


Calling

1 



- All Calls opens; press  to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Ranking and then Received Calls.


2 Select record ➔ 

- Open Decoration Call record and press  for the corresponding file.

When the Same Number is Dialed More than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk and Decoration Call.)

Advanced

-  ● Dialing from records ● Sending messages from records ● Saving Phone Book entries from records ● Placing Decoration Calls from records ● Initiating S! Circle Talk from records (And more on P.3-17)

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Call**

2 **Call Time/Data Counter** ➔



Call Time/Data Counter Menu

3 **Call Timers** ➔



4 **Dialed Calls or Received Calls** ➔

Resetting Dialed or Received Call Timer
 After **4**, ➔ **Enter Handset Code**
 ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls Checking packet transmission volume Resetting Data Counter (And more on **P.3-17 - 3-18**)



Restrict Destinations

Allow calls to numbers saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

- 1 → **Settings** → → → **Call** → **Call Barring** →
- 2 **Restrict Destinations** → → **Enter Handset Code** →



Restrict Destinations Menu

- 3 **Phonebook Entries** → → **On** →

When Phonebook Entries is On

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Permitted List

Specifying Numbers

- 1 In Restrict Destinations menu, **Specified Numbers** →



Specified Numbers Menu

- 2 **Permitted List** →
- 3 **<Empty>** →
- 4 Enter phone number →
 - Repeat 3 - 4 to add phone numbers.

Activating Permitted List

- 1 In Specified Numbers menu, **Switch On/Off** →
- 2 **On** →



Advanced

- Designating Permitted List numbers from saved information Editing Permitted List (P.3-18)

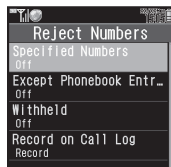
Reject Numbers

Reject calls from specified/unsaved numbers or calls without Caller ID.

Rejecting Specified Numbers

Specifying Numbers

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Call** ➔ **Call Barring** ➔
- 2 **Reject Numbers** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔



Reject Numbers Menu

3 Specified Numbers ➔



Specified Numbers Menu

4 Set Reject Number ➔

5 <Empty> ➔

6 Enter phone number ➔

- Repeat 5 - 6 to add phone numbers.

Activating Rejection

1 In Specified Numbers menu, **Switch On/Off** ➔

2 On ➔

Rejecting Unsaved Numbers

1 In Reject Numbers menu, **Except Phonebook Entries** ➔

2 On ➔

Rejecting Withheld Caller ID

Calls from public phones or with undisplayable Caller ID are also rejected.

1 In Reject Numbers menu, **Withheld** ➔

2 On ➔

Advanced

- Designating numbers to reject from saved information Editing Reject Numbers list Excluding rejected calls from Call Log (P.3-18)



Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions

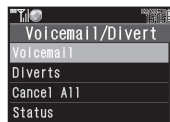
*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

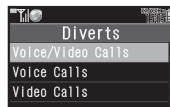
1 **Settings** **Call**

2 **Voicemail/Divert**



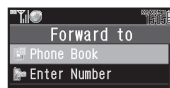
Voicemail/Divert Menu

3 **Diverts**



4 **Select call type**

5 **No Answer**



6 **Phone Book** **Select entry**

7 **Select phone number**
• Omit 7 if only one number is saved.

8

9 **Select ring time**

Diverting Calls without Handset Response

In 5, **Always** 6 - 8

Entering Forwarding Number Directly
In 5, **Enter Number** **Enter phone number** **Select ring time**

Advanced

Checking service status (P.3-19)



Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (**No Answer** set):

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Voicemail** ➔ **Activate** ➔ **Activate**



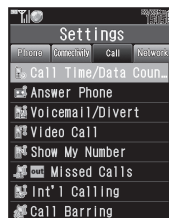
- 2 **No Answer** ➔ **Select ring time** ➔ **Select**

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In **2**, **Always** ➔ **Activate**

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

- 1 **Call** ➔ **Settings** ➔ **Call**

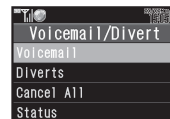


Call Menu

- 2 **Missed Calls** ➔ **Activate**
- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

- 1 In Call menu, **Voicemail/Divert** ➔ **Divert** ➔ **Divert**



Voicemail/Divert Menu

- 2 **Voicemail** ➔ **Divert**
- 3 **Call Voicemail** ➔ **Divert**

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Deleting New Voicemail Message Indicator
In **3**, **Delete Icon** ➔ **Yes** ➔ **Yes**

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

- 1 In Voicemail/Divert menu, **Cancel All** ➔ **Cancel All**



- 2 **Yes** ➔ **Yes**

Advanced

- Activating Call Waiting
- Talking on multiple lines simultaneously
- Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction
- Setting/canceling incoming call restriction (And more on P.3-19 - 3-20)



Receiving a Call

Handling Incoming Calls

Rejecting calls	Voice Call When a call arrives, ➔ Reject ➔
	Video Call When a call arrives,
Placing calls on hold	When a call arrives, • Press to answer the call on hold.
Answering with Headphones	When a call arrives, Long Press Call Button • To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

Answer Phone

Recording caller messages	When a Voice Call arrives, ➔ Record Message ➔
Changing ring time	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Answer Phone ➔ ➔ Answer Time ➔ ➔ Enter time ➔
Sampling outgoing message	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Answer Phone ➔ ➔ Outgoing Message ➔ • Press to stop playback.
Muting Earpiece	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Answer Phone ➔ ➔ Volume ➔ ➔ Silent ➔

Remote Monitor (Video Call)

Answering Video Calls automatically	Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Video Call ➔ ➔ Remote Monitor ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ See below
	Saving Numbers from Phone Book Auto Answer List ➔ ➔ <Empty> ➔ ➔ Change ➔ ➔ From Phone Book ➔ ➔ Select entry ➔ ➔ Select phone number ➔ • To enter a phone number directly, select <Empty> and press .
	Saving Numbers from Call Log Auto Answer List ➔ ➔ <Empty> ➔ ➔ Change ➔ ➔ From Call Log ➔ ➔ Select record ➔
Editing Auto Answer List	Activating Remote Monitor Switch On/Off ➔ ➔ On ➔ ➔ • A tone sounds for calls answered via Remote Monitor. (Tone and volume are fixed.) • Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.
	Start Here ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Video Call ➔ ➔ Remote Monitor ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ Auto Answer List ➔ ➔ See below
Changing ring time	Editing Numbers Select entry ➔ ➔ ➔ Edit ➔ Deleting Entries Select entry ➔ ➔ Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔



Placing a Call

Basic Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ In Phone menu, Earpiece Volume ➔ ➔ Adjust level ➔
Sending/blocking Caller ID	After phone number entry, ➔ Hide My ID or Show My ID ➔

International Calls

Placing calls by entering country code directly	➔ ➔ (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter phone number with area code ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy or some other countries.
Adding a country code automatically when placing calls	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Int'l Calling ➔ ➔ Auto Add Code ➔ ➔ See below Activating Auto Add Code Switch On/Off ➔ ➔ On ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included. Selecting a Country from List Country Code ➔ ➔ Select country ➔ Specifying a Country Code Country Code ➔ ➔ Enter Code ➔ ➔ Enter country code ➔
Saving frequently used international prefix	➔ Settings ➔ ➔ ➔ Call ➔ Int'l Calling ➔ ➔ Int'l Prefix ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ Enter prefix ➔

Adding/changing/deleting country codes

➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Call** ➔ **Int'l Calling** ➔ ➔ **Country Codes** ➔ ➔ See below

Adding

<Empty> ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Enter country code ➔

Changing

Select country ➔ ➔ **Change** ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔ ➔ Enter country code ➔

Deleting

Select country ➔ ➔ **Delete** ➔ ➔ Yes ➔

During a Call

Voice Call & Video Call

	Voice Call During a call, (press again to cancel)
Muting Microphone	Video Call During a call, ➔ Mute ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To cancel, select Unmute.
Activating/canceling Loudspeaker	Activating Loudspeaker for Voice Call During a call, ➔ While message appears, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To cancel, press . Canceling Loudspeaker for Video Call During a call, (press again to activate)
Switching sound output	During a call, ➔ Transfer Audio ➔ ➔ To Phone or To Bluetooth ➔
Opening Phone Book	During a call, ➔ Phone Book ➔ ➔ Select entry ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press twice to return to call window.



Saving Phone Book entries	During a call, ☎ ➔ Phone Book ➔ ● ➔ ☎ ➔ Add New Entry ➔ ● ➔ Complete fields ➔ ⏏ • Press Back to return to call window.
Disabling touch tone signaling	During a call, ☎ ➔ Disable DTMF ➔ ●
Placing calls on hold	During a call, ☎ ➔ Hold ➔ ● • Subscription to Call Waiting or Group Calling is required to place Voice Calls on hold. • To resume Voice Calls, press ☎, select Retrieve and press ●. • To resume Video Calls, press ⏏.
■ Voice Call Only	
Recording caller voice	During a call, ☎ ➔ Record Caller Voice ➔ ● ➔ Recording starts ➔ ● ➔ Recording ends
Opening messages	During a call, ☎ ➔ Messaging ➔ ● ➔ Select Messaging folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select message ➔ ● • Press Back three times to return to call window.
Creating messages	During a call, ☎ ➔ Messaging ➔ ● ➔ Create Message or Create New SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ ⏏
■ Video Call Only	
Adjusting Outgoing Image brightness	During a call, ☎ ➔ Exposure ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ● • Alternative Image brightness is fixed.

Decoration Call

Creating Decoration Call files	Start Here ➔ ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Decoration Call ➔ ☎ ➔ Create New File ➔ ● ➔ Text Input ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ● ➔ Images ➔ ● ➔ See below
	Using Still Images Picture ➔ ● ➔ Pictures ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ Sounds ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ Yes or No ➔ ● ➔ ⏏ ➔ Save here ➔ ●
	Using Video Video ➔ ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ Yes or No ➔ ● ➔ ⏏ ➔ Save here ➔ ●
	Using Flash® Animation Flash® ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ● ➔ Yes or No ➔ ● ➔ ⏏ ➔ Save here ➔ ●
Editing Decoration Call files	● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Decoration Call ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☎ ➔ Edit ➔ ● ➔ Edit ➔ ⏏ ➔ Save as New or Overwrite ➔ ● • For Save as New , select Save here and press ●.
Saving received Decoration Call files	Back ➔ Select record ➔ ☎ ➔ Save File ➔ ● ➔ Save here ➔ ●
Restricting incoming/outgoing Decoration Calls	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Call ➔ Decoration Call ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●
Hiding incoming Decoration Call window	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Call ➔ Decoration Call ➔ ● ➔ Play in Receiving ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●



Using mobile camera to create Decoration Call files	<p>Start Here → Data Folder → Decoration Call → Create New File → Text Input → Enter text → Images → See below</p>
	<p>Capturing Still Images</p> <p>Picture → Take Picture → to shoot → Save here</p>
	<p>Recording Video</p> <p>Video → Record Video → to start recording → to stop → Save → Yes or No → Save here</p>
Showing options upon Decoration Call failure	<p>Settings → Call → Decoration Call → Notice → On</p>

Call Log

Dialing from records	<p>Calling Dialed Numbers (Redial)</p> <p>Select record → To place Video Calls, press instead of , then select Video Call and press .</p>
	<p>Calling from Received Call Records</p> <p>Select record → To place Video Calls, press instead of , then select Video Call and press .</p>
Sending messages from records	<p>Select record → Create Message → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message</p>
Saving Phone Book entries from records	<p>Select record → Save to Phone Book → As New Entry → Complete other fields → To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.</p>

Placing Decoration Calls from records	<p>Select record → Deco. Call → Deco. Call File → Select/create file</p>
Initiating S! Circle Talk from records	<p>Select record → Call S! Circle Talk → Set Connection status to Online first.</p>
Deleting records	<p>One Record</p> <p>Select record → Delete → Yes</p>
	<p>All Records</p> <p>Select record → Delete All → Enter Handset Code → Yes</p>
Hiding Dialed Ranking	<p>Phone → Call Log Setting → Hide Dialed Ranking → Handset Code is required to re-select Show Dialed Ranking.</p>

Call Time & Data Communication

Call Time

Setting handset to beep during Voice Calls	<p>Settings → Call → Call Time/Data Counter → Minute Minder → On</p>
Hiding Call Time during calls	<p>Settings → Call → Call Time/Data Counter → Call Time Counter → Off</p>
Resetting Call Timers	<p>Settings → Call → Call Time/Data Counter → Call Timers → Clear Timers → Enter Handset Code → Yes</p>



■ Data Communication

Checking packet transmission volume	Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Time/Data Counter → Data Counter → See below
	Most Recent Volume Last Data →
	All Volume All Data →
Resetting Data Counter	Settings → Call → Call Time/Data Counter → Data Counter → Clear Counter → Yes →

Restrict Destinations

Designating Permitted List numbers from saved information	Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Destinations → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Permitted List → <Empty> → See below
	From Phone Book Ph. Book List → Select entry →
	From Call Log Records From Call Log → Select record →
	From S! Friend's Status Member List From Friend's Status → Select member →
Editing Permitted List	Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Restrict Destinations → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Permitted List → See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name → Edit →
	Deleting Numbers Select number/name → Delete → Yes →

Reject Numbers

Designating numbers to reject from saved information	Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Set Reject Number → See below
	From Phone Book Ph. Book List → Select entry →
	From Call Log Records From Call Log → Select record →
	From S! Friend's Status Member List From Friend's Status → Select member →
Editing Reject Numbers list	Start Here → Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Specified Numbers → Set Reject Number → See below
	Editing Numbers Select number/name → Edit →
	Deleting Numbers Select number/name → Delete → Yes →
Excluding rejected calls from Call Log	Settings → Call → Call Barring → Reject Numbers → Enter Handset Code → Record on Call Log → Do not Record →



Optional Services

■ All Services

Checking service status	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ ☎ Call ➔ Select service ➔ ● ➔ Status ➔ ● ● For Call Barring , select restriction and press ●.
-------------------------	---

■ Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ ☎ Call ➔ Call Waiting ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●
Placing Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2	A tone sounds during a Voice Call ➔ ☎ ● Press ☎ to switch between lines. ● Press ☎ to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

■ Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening another line during a Call	During a Voice Call, enter phone number ➔ ☎ ● Long Press ☎ to select a number from Call Log records.
Switching between open lines (Swap Calls)	During a Voice Call, ☎ ● Press ☎ to switch between lines.
Talking on multiple lines simultaneously	While switching between lines, ☎ ➔ Group Calling ➔ ● ➔ Conference All ➔ ●
Switching to private conversation	During Group Calling, select number/name ➔ ● ➔ Private ➔ ●

■ Call Barring

Changing Network Password	● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ ☎ Call ➔ Call Barring ➔ ● ➔ Change NW Password ➔ ● ➔ Enter current Network Password ➔ ● ➔ Enter new Network Password ➔ ● ➔ Re-enter new Network Password ➔ ●
Setting/canceling outgoing call restriction	<div>Start Here</div> ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ ☎ Call ➔ Call Barring ➔ ● ➔ Bar Outgoing Calls ➔ ● ➔ See below Setting Restriction Select restriction ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ● ➔ Enter Network Password ➔ ● ● Outgoing SMS messages are also restricted. ● Outgoing SI Circle Talk requests are not affected. ● Following restrictions are available: ■ All Outgoing Calls: Restrict all non-emergency calls ■ Bar Int'l Call: Restrict all international calls ■ Local & Home Only: Restrict all international calls except to Japan Canceling All Restrictions Cancel All ➔ ● ➔ Enter Network Password ➔ ●



Setting/canceling incoming call restriction

Start Here → **Settings** → **Call** → **Call Barring** → **Bar Incoming Calls**
See below

Setting Restriction

Select restriction → On → Enter Network Password

- Incoming SMS messages are also restricted.
- Incoming SI Circle Talk requests are not affected.
- Following restrictions are available:
 - All Incoming Calls: Reject all calls
 - Bar if Abroad: Reject calls when outside Japan

Canceling All Restrictions

Cancel All → Enter Network Password

Caller ID

Showing/hiding Caller ID

→ Settings → Call → Show My Number → On or Off

Settings

Voice Call

Answering calls automatically when using Headphones

Start Here → **Settings** → **Call** → **Auto Answer** → Enter Handset Code

Activating Auto Answer

Switch On/Off → On

- When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone even in Manner mode; cancel afterward.

Changing Ring Time

Answer Time → Enter time

Video Call

Sending External Camera image when initiating Video Calls

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Camera Picture → Default Image → External Camera

Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Loudspeaker → Off

Muting Microphone when initiating Video Calls

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Mute Microphone → On

Changing Alternative Image that is sent when initiating Video Calls

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Camera Picture → Alternative Image → Select folder → Select file

Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture → Select quality

Setting image that is sent while call is on hold

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Hold Guidance Pict → Select folder → Select file

- Omit file selection step when using Customized Screen images.

Setting Backlight status

→ Settings → Call → Video Call → Backlight → Select option

- Selecting **Normal Setting** applies Display Backlight settings.



Receiving a Call

? Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice




- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages.
- Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.

Placing a Call


? Cannot place call via Speed Dial

- Speed Dial is not available when Phone Book access is restricted by Application Lock.

? Cannot place call

- If  appears, cancel Keypad Lock.
- If  appears, cancel Function Lock.
- If  appears, cancel Offline Mode.

? Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone

- Did you include the area code or the first 0? Dial the number including the area code or 0.
- Handset may be out-of-range ( appears). Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

During a Call

? Outgoing Image is distorted during Video Calls

- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.

? Conversation is hampered

- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise.
- Check Earpiece Volume when using Loudspeaker. Increasing Earpiece Volume may cause feedback/interference.

? Call is choppy or cut off

- Network signal may be weak. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
- Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Clicking noise is heard during call

- Handset may be moving into another service area. Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.

? Cannot hear other party's voice

- Earpiece Volume may be low. Increase Earpiece Volume (P.3-3).
- Sound output may be set to use handsfree device. Set Transfer Audio (P.3-15) to *To Phone*.

Other

? Call Time (in *Dialed Calls* or *Received Calls*) seems incorrect

- Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. (On hold time is counted.)

? Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding

- Does the number start with 1, 00, 0120 or 0990? Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.



Messaging	4-2
Basics	4-2
Customizing Handset Address	4-3
Sending Messages.....	4-4
Sending S! Mail	4-4
Sending SMS.....	4-7
Restricting Outgoing Messages.....	4-8
Incoming Messages.....	4-9
Opening & Replying.....	4-9
Customizing S! Mail Retrieval	4-11
Handling Messages	4-12
Managing & Using Messages.....	4-12
Sorting Messages.....	4-14

Chat Folders.....	4-15
Using Chat Folders.....	4-15
Mail Groups	4-16
Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail	4-16
PC Mail.....	4-17
Additional Functions	4-20
Troubleshooting.....	4-35

4

Messaging



Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc; attach media files, etc.

Large Size Messages

Transmit messages of up to 1 MB including large images or multiple files; may incur high charges depending on subscribed price plan.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 935SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Cancel to disable (P.4-30).



Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.

For more information, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).

Changing Address

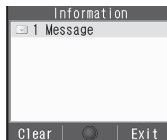
1 ➔ **Settings** ➔

2 **Address Settings** ➔

- Handset connects to the Internet.
Select **English** and press , then follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank Mobile sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1 **Message** ➔



2 **Information** ➔



3 **Yes** ➔



4



Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

- 1 ➔ **Create Message** ➔
 When a PC Mail Account exists, select **S! Mail** and press .



S! Mail Composition Window

- 2 **Select recipient field** ➔
- 3 **Phone Book** ➔
- 4 **Select entry** ➔

- 5 **Select number or mail address** ➔
 - Omit if only one number or address is saved.
 - When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

- 6 **Select subject field** ➔ ➔ **Enter subject** ➔

- 7 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

- 8 **Enter message** ➔



S! Mail Composition Window

- 9 ➔ **Transmission starts**
 - To cancel, press during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

Previewing Outgoing Message

- After , ➔ **Preview Message** ➔

Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

- [S! Mail Composition Window] ➔ **Switch Line** ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

Advanced

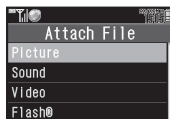
- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Inserting signature automatically
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.4-20**)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Designating/editing reply-to address (And more on **P.4-21 - 4-22**)
- Requesting Delivery Report for all messages
- Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages
- Hiding progress bar while sending messages (And more on **P.4-30**)



Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, select attachment field ➡



- 2 **Picture** ➡ ➡ **Select folder** ➡

- 3 **Select file** ➡



Attach File Window

- 4 ➡ **Transmission starts**

Attaching Non-Image Files

- In , select a folder other than **Picture** and press , then select a file.

Attaching Multiple Files

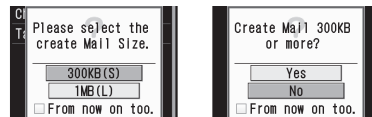
After , **Attach (1)** ➡ ➡ **Attach**

File ➡ ➡ **From**

- **X** in **Attach (X)** indicates the number of attached files.

Message Size Limit

When message size reaches certain limit upon attaching a file, one of the following confirmations appears:



Select message size limit or choose **Yes** and press to proceed. (Images may be resized automatically.) To make selection the default setting hereafter, press to check **From now on too.** check-box.

(Confirmation will be disabled.)

If Recipient Cannot Receive Large Messages (Up to 1 MB)

- Message may be truncated or attachments may be lost.

Sending Feeling Mail

- 1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ➡ **Feeling Settings** ➡



- 2 **Select category, e.g., Happy/Glad** ➡

- 3 **Select item, e.g., I Love You** ➡



- 4 ➡ **Transmission starts**

Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window] Select subject field ➡ ➡ Select Pictogram, e.g., ➡

Advanced

- Changing attached image size
- Set Auto Play File (And more on P.4-22)
- Disabling image auto-resize
- Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size
- Limiting incoming S! Mail message size (And more on P.4-32)



Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

4

Messaging

1 In text entry window, (Long)

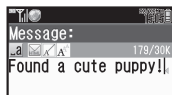


Graphic Mail Window

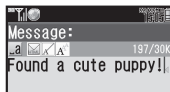
2 SIZE →



3 Select size → Enter text



4 → BG → Select color →



5 → IMAGE → Select folder → Select file →



6 Select target location →

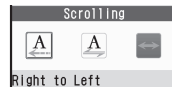
7 → MY PICT → Select file →



8 → EFFECT →



9 Scrolling →



10 Select direction → Enter text

11 → Transmission starts

Canceling Last Action

[Graphic Mail Window] UNDO →

Canceling All Graphic Mail Settings

[Graphic Mail Window] CANCEL →

→ Yes →

Saving as Templates

After 10, → Save as

Template → Enter name →

→ Save here →

- Only the message text is saved.

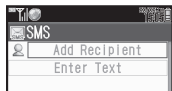
Advanced

- Creating Graphic Mail from templates
- Changing text color, size & effect
- Changing text color
- Inserting background sound
- Inserting Flash® file
- Inserting horizontal line
- Flashing text
- Aligning text (left/right/center) (And more on P.4-22 - 4-23)

Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ➔ **Create New SMS** ➔



SMS Composition Window

2 ➔ **Select recipient field** ➔

3 **Phone Book** ➔

4 **Select entry** ➔

5 **Select number** ➔



- Omit if only one number is saved.

6 **Select message text field** ➔



Text Entry Window

7 **Enter message** ➔



SMS Composition Window

8 ➔ **Transmission starts**

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Personal Mode

- When recipient is entered via Phone Book, text entry window word suggestions change according to recipient type.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit

- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:

Yes ➔

Specifying Line in Dual Mode

[SMS Composition Window] ➔

Switch Line ➔ ➔ **Select line** ➔

Advanced

- Using other recipient entry methods
- Adding recipients
- Using Speed Dial/Mail list
- Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail) (And more on **P.4-20**)
- Saving without sending
- Requesting delivery confirmation
- Changing Server sent message storage limit (And more on **P.4-21 - 4-22**)
- Changing Server sent message storage limit
- Changing SMS Server number
- Changing character encoding for composing messages (**P.4-34**)



Restricting Outgoing Messages

Allow messaging to handset numbers/addresses saved in Phone Book or Permitted List only.

Limiting to Phone Book

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔
- 2 **General Settings** ➔ ➔ **Send/Compose** ➔
- 3 **Restrictions Setting** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔



Set Restrict Mail Menu

- 4 **Phonebook Entries** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

When Phonebook Entries is **On**

- Handset Code is required to add/edit Phone Book entries.

Limiting to Permitted List

Specifying Mail Addresses

- 1 In Set Restrict Mail menu, **Individual Address** ➔



Individual Address Menu

- 2 **Permitted List** ➔
- 3 **<Empty>** ➔
- 4 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address** ➔
 - Repeat 3 - 4 to add mail addresses.

Activating Permitted List

- 1 In Individual Address menu, **Switch On/Off** ➔
- 2 **On** ➔

Advanced

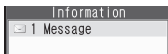
- Deleting Permitted List entries (P.4-31)



Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.
See **P.4-19** to receive PC Mail.



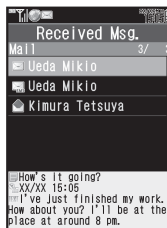
Important Message Retrieval Notes

- By default, complete messages including attachments are retrieved in and outside Japan; transmission fees apply depending on subscribed price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval while abroad may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming.
- To retrieve only the initial portion of message text automatically, set Message DL to **Manual**; retrieve complete message manually as needed.

Delivery Report

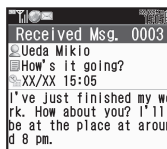
- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:
Delivery Report ➡ **Select message with report**

1 Message ➡



Message List

2 Select message ➡



- Message window opens.

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Small Light, Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

Enter or select answer ➡

- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is included in subject or message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

Mail Notice

- When Message DL is not set to **Auto (All)**, Server sends initial portion of message text in each of the following cases:
 - The message was sent to multiple recipients
 - Files are attached to the message

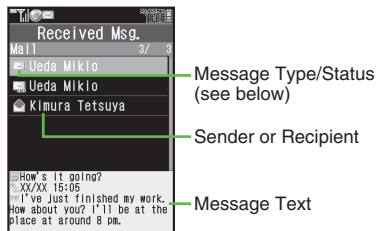
Advanced

- Accessing new mail out of Standby ● Retrieving new S! Mail manually ● Retrieving remaining portions (And more on **P.4-23**)
- Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders ● Changing alerts for messages received during handset use (And more on **P.4-31**)



Window Description

Message List



Message Type/Status

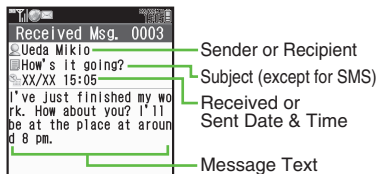
	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Send Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

SMS or PC appears for SMS/PC Mail messages (✉, etc.).

Advanced

- Saving attachments to Data Folder
- Saving to Phone Book
- Using linked info
- Looking up message text words in dictionaries
- Jumping to message top/bottom
- Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers
- Selecting mail type/quote option
- Opening received message for reference
- Replying quickly using fixed text
- Replying to messages automatically (And more on P.4-24 - 4-25)
- Selecting quote option (P.4-30)

Message Window



Press to open next (newer) message, or to open previous (older) one.

Changing Font Size

(Long) to enlarge or (Long) to reduce

Replying to Messages

1 In message window,



- Original message text is quoted (except for SMS and Graphic Mail).

2 Complete message

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After 1, To Sender or Reply All

Reply Assist Dictionary (メール返信アシスト辞書)

- When replying, this dictionary prioritizes original message words in suggestion list.

Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode (Manner mode, etc.).



Customizing S! Mail Retrieval

Set complete S! Mail retrieval to manual (Server sends only initial portion of message text without attachments) or set handset to retrieve complete messages automatically by specifying sender type, mail address, etc.

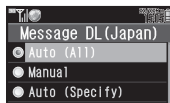
Retrieving Messages Manually

Set message retrieval for handset use within or outside Japan, separately.

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔
- 2 **S! Mail Settings** ➔



- 3 **Message DL(Japan) or Message DL(Abroad)** ➔



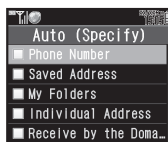
Message DL Menu

4 **Manual** ➔

Restricting Automatic Retrieval

By Sender Type

- 1 In Message DL menu, **Auto (Specify)** ➔



Auto (Specify) Menu

- 2 **Select item** ➔ (☐/ ☒) ➔

By Mail Address

Specify mail addresses or domains (alphanumerics after @ of mail addresses).

- 1 In Auto (Specify) menu, **Individual Address** ➔



- 2 **Select blank entry** ➔
- 3 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address** ➔
 - Repeat 2 - 3 to add mail addresses.

- 4

- 5 (☒) ➔

Restricting by Domain (Direct Entry)

- In 1, **Receive by the Domain** ➔
 ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ➔ **Direct Entry** ➔ ➔ **Enter domain** ➔ ➔

Advanced

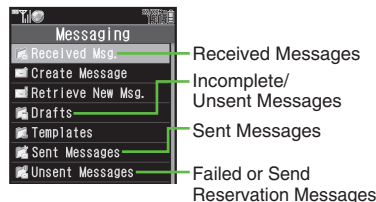
- Retrieving remaining portions (P.4-23)
- Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval (P.4-32)



Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



Auto Delete

- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

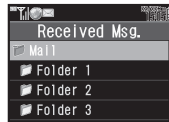
Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:

☰ → **Help** → ●

Checking Messages

- 1 ☰ → **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** → ●



Folder List

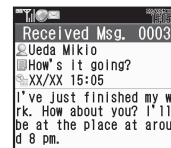
- When a PC Mail Account exists, PC Mail folder (folder with the name specified in Account Name) appears.
- Select Mail folder or PC Mail folder and press ☺ to hide/show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press ●.

- 2 Select folder → ●



Message List

- 3 Select message → ●



Message Window

Protecting Messages

- 1 In message list, select message → ☰ → **Manage Msg.** → ●

- 2 **Lock** → ●

Canceling Protection

In 2, **Unlock** → ●

Advanced

- Selecting multiple messages ● Color-tagging messages ● Deleting messages (And more on P.4-26 - 4-27)
- Forwarding messages ● Sending from Drafts ● Checking Server Mail message count and volume (And more on P.4-29)
- Changing message window scroll unit ● Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages ● Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (And more on P.4-30)



Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

- 1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔
- 2 ➔ **Search** ➔
- 3 **Search All Msg.** ➔
- 4 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter address or text** ➔

Searching by Folder

In , select folder ➔ ➔ **Search** ➔ ➔ **Search Folder** ➔ ➔ 4

Searching Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.

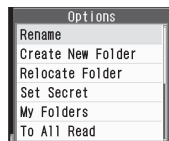
[Message Window] ➔ **Search Text** ➔ ➔ **Enter text** ➔

- Press or to jump to next/previous search result.

Hiding Folders

Hide Received Msg./Sent Message folder to require Handset Code for access to the folder and messages within. Chat Folders are not affected.

- 1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔
- 2 **Select folder** ➔



- 3 **Set Secret** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ➔

Accessing Secret Folders

After 1, ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Advanced

- Moving messages manually Renaming folders Deleting folders Adding folders Moving folders Changing status of all messages within folders to read Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders Canceling Secret (P.4-27)



Sorting Messages

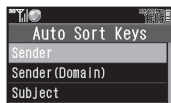
Sorting into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in subject or SMS message text.

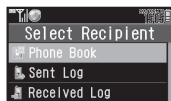
1 ➔ **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** ➔

2 Select target folder ➔

3 **My Folders** ➔ ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔



4 **Sender (Recipient for Sent Messages)** ➔



5 Select method ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔

6 ➔ **Saved**

Sorting by Domain (Direct Entry)

In 4, **Sender(Domain)**
(**Recipient(Domain)** for Sent Messages) ➔ ➔ **Direct Entry** ➔

➔ **Enter domain** ➔ ➔ 6

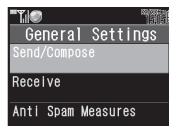
Sorting by Part of Subject/SMS Message Text

In 4, **Subject** ➔ ➔ **Enter text** ➔ ➔ 6

Filtering Spam

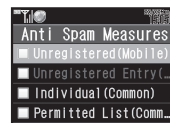
Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:
(Alternatively, set sort keys to filter messages.)

1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **General Settings** ➔



2 **Anti Spam Measures** ➔

3 **Enter Handset Code** ➔



4 **Unregistered(Mobile)** ➔

5 ➔

Exempting Messages from Filtering
After 4, **Permitted List(Common)** ➔

➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ➔

Select key ➔ ➔ **Select/enter**

number/address/subject ➔ ➔

➔ ➔ 5

When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

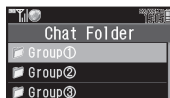
- Re-sorting messages
- Sorting spam by setting keys
- Editing/deleting sort keys (P.4-28)

Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

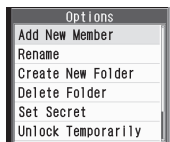
Saving Members

- 1 ➔ **Chat Folder** ➔

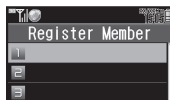


Chat Folder List

- 2 ➔ **Select folder** ➔

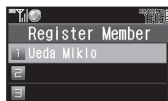


- 3 ➔ **Add New Member** ➔



- 4 **Select blank entry** ➔
• Select saved member to edit number/
address.

- 5 **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/
enter number/address** ➔



- Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

- 6 ➔ **Saved**

Changing Members

In 4, select member ➔ ➔

Change Member ➔ ➔ From 5

Deleting Members

In 4, select member ➔ ➔ **Delete**

➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ 6

Opening Chat Folders

- 1 In Chat Folder list, select
folder ➔



- 2 **Select message** ➔

4

Messaging

Advanced

Deleting folders Deleting all messages Resetting Chat Folders (P.4-28)



Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

Save target recipients to Phone Book beforehand.

1  ➔ **Settings** ➔ 

2 **Set Mail Group** ➔ 



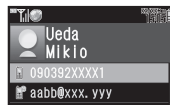
Mail Group Entry Window

3 **<Add New Group>** ➔  ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔ 

4 **Select Group** ➔ 






5 **<Assign New Entry>** ➔  ➔ **Select entry** ➔ 



6 **Select number or mail address** ➔ 



- Omit  if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat  -  to add members.

7  ➔ **Saved**

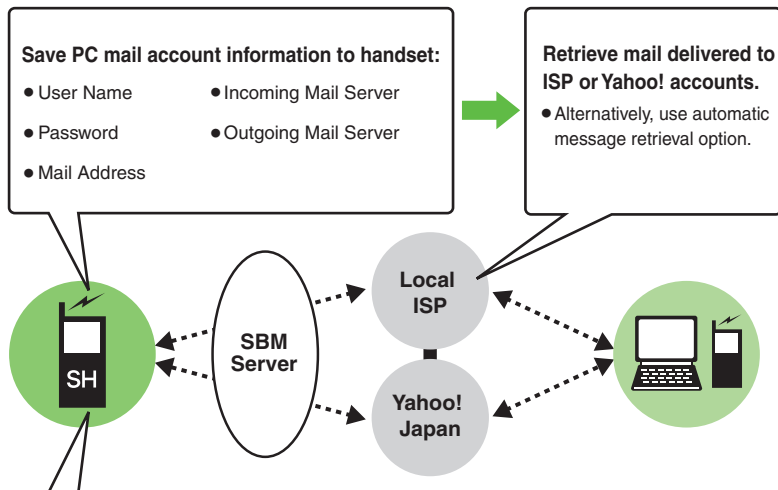


Advanced

-   Renaming Mail Groups
-  Deleting Mail Groups/Group members
-  Changing Mail Group members (P.4-28)

PC Mail

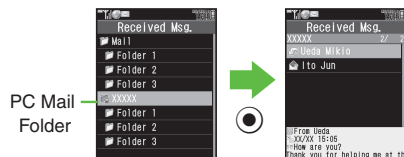
Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.



Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high charges; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset (then opened, replied with quotes, forwarded, etc.), included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.

Messages are saved in unique folders; reply to/send messages via PC mail account addresses.



- Handle messages (sort, etc.) like S! Mail or SMS. (Unavailable functions do not appear in Options menu and some may appear under different names.)



PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.


Mandatory Items for Retrieval




User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

Mandatory Items for Transmission

Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

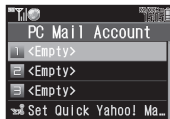
Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press .

- 1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ **PC Mail Settings** ➔ 







- 2 **PC Mail Account** ➔ 






- 3 **<Empty>** ➔ 

- 4 **Account Name** ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔ 

- 5 **Set Receiving** ➔  ➔ **Select item** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter item** ➔  ➔ 

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.



- 6 **Set Sending** ➔  ➔ **Select item** ➔  ➔ **Select/enter item** ➔ 

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

- 7  ➔  ➔ 

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses




- In , **Set Quick Yahoo! Mail** ➔  ➔ **Yes or No** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Choose **No** to create a new account.

Editing Accounts











- In , select account ➔  ➔ **From** 4

Deleting Accounts

- In , select account ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔ 

Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

- In , **Set Sending** ➔  ➔ **Sender Auth.** ➔  ➔ **SMTP Auth.** ➔  ➔ **User Name** ➔  ➔ **Enter name** ➔  ➔ **Password** ➔  ➔ **Enter password** ➔  ➔  ➔  ➔ 7



Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.



Message Window

- Press to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

Deleting Messages

[Message List] Select message **Delete** Select option **Yes**

Retrieving Messages by Account

After , select account

Checking Received PC Mail



- Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.

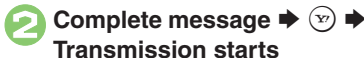


- Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail



- PC Mail Composition window opens.
- Original message text is quoted (except for HTML messages).



Replying without Quoting Original Message Text

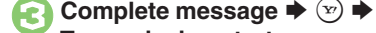
[Message Window] **Reply** **PC Mail** **Complete message**

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages

[PC Mail Composition Window] Select recipient field **From:** Select account

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:



Converting PC Mail to S! Mail

After , **Convert to S! Mail**

Yes

Note

- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

Advanced

- Retrieving complete PC Mail messages
- Retrieving new messages automatically
- Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder
- Disabling automatic word wrap
- Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses
- Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval
- Restricting complete message retrieval by size (P.4-33 - 4-34)



Creating/Sending Messages

Recipient

Using other recipient entry methods	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ●
Adding recipients	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Add Recipient ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ● ➡
Switching recipient status (To, Cc and Bcc)	In Mail Composition window, select recipient field ➡ ● ➡ Select recipient ➡ ➡ Select status ➡ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.

Using Speed Dial/Mail list	Saving Recipients ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ Speed Dial/Mail ➡ ● ➡ <Empty> ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ Do not Assign ➡ ● ➡
----------------------------	---

	Creating Messages In Standby, - (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ➡ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select S! Mail or SMS and press .
--	--

Editing/deleting recipients	<p>Editing Recipients Select recipient ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●</p> <p>Deleting a Recipient Select recipient ➡ ➡ Delete ➡ ●</p> <p>Deleting All Recipients Select recipient ➡ ➡ Delete All ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●</p>
-----------------------------	--

Editing Speed Dial/Mail list	<p>Start Here ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ Speed Dial/Mail ➡ ● ➡ See below</p> <p>Editing Entries Select entry ➡ ➡ Change ➡ ● ➡ Select number/address ➡ ● ➡ Select new number/address ➡ ● ➡ </p> <p>Canceling Entries Select entry ➡ ➡ Remove Selected ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●</p> <p>Canceling All Entries ➡ Remove All ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●</p>
------------------------------	---

Message Text

Inserting signature automatically	➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ S! Mail Settings ➡ ● ➡ Signature ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ Enter signature ➡ ● ➡ Auto Insert ➡ ● ➡ On ➡ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies. Not available for SMS.
Inserting signature manually	In text entry window, ➡ Insert/Font Size ➡ ● ➡ Signature ➡ ●
Inserting ASCII Art	In text entry window, ➡ Call ASCII Art ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●
Converting mail type (SMS/S! Mail)	In Mail Composition window, ➡ Change to SMS or Convert to S! Mail ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●



■ Save, Send Reservation & Sent Cancel

Saving without sending	After completing message, (⊖) ➔ Save to Drafts ➔ (●)
Sending automatically later	(Start Here) After completing message, (⊖) ➔ Send Reservation ➔ (●) ➔ See below
	Auto Send when Signal Returns Within the Network ➔ (●) ➔ Yes ➔ (●)
	Designating Send Date/Time (within one week) Date & Time ➔ (●) ➔ Enter date/time ➔ (●) ➔ Yes ➔ (●)
Canceling sent S! Mail	(⊖) ➔ Sent Messages ➔ (●) ➔ Select folder ➔ (●) ➔ Select message ➔ (⊖) ➔ Set Sent Cancel ➔ (●) ➔ Yes ➔ (●) • Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.

■ Messaging Settings

- For SMS, only Delivery Report and Expiry Time are available.
- For PC Mail, only Reply to Settings and Priority are available.

Requesting delivery confirmation	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Delivery Report ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) • Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered. • Open sent message to check delivery status indicator: ■ : Delivered, : Unknown, : Failed • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Setting priority	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Priority ➔ (●) ➔ Select priority ➔ (●)
Setting message to be deleted from recipient handset once read	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Set Auto Delete ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.

Adding a reply request	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Reply Request ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Restricting forward/delete	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Forward NG or Delete NG ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Locking message with Quiz	(Start Here) In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Quiz ➔ (●) ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) ➔ See below • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
	Using Preset Questions (Multiple Choice) Select question ➔ (●) ➔ Selection ➔ (●) ➔ Select number ➔ (●) ➔ Enter/edit option ➔ (●) ➔ Enter/edit all options ➔ Select answer ➔ (Ⓜ) ➔ (⊖) ➔ (⊖) ➔ (⊖) • May be unavailable for some questions.
	Using Preset Questions (Exact Answer Entry) Select question ➔ (●) ➔ Match Characters ➔ (●) ➔ Enter answer ➔ (●) ➔ (⊖) • May be unavailable for some questions.
	Creating Custom Quiz (Multiple Choice) <Create Original> ➔ (●) ➔ Enter question ➔ (●) ➔ Selection ➔ (●) ➔ Select number ➔ (●) ➔ Enter option ➔ (●) ➔ Complete entry ➔ (●) ➔ Select answer ➔ (Ⓜ) ➔ (⊖) ➔ (⊖) ➔ (⊖)
Editing assigned Quiz	Creating Custom Quiz (Exact Answer Entry) <Create Original> ➔ (●) ➔ Enter question ➔ (●) ➔ Match Characters ➔ (●) ➔ Enter answer ➔ (●) ➔ (⊖)
	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Quiz ➔ (●) ➔ Edit Question ➔ (●) ➔ Edit question/options/answer ➔ (⊖) (⊖) again after editing options) • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.



Lowering size limit for outgoing S! Mail messages	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Create Msg. Size ➔ (●) ➔ 300KB ➔ (●)
Designating/editing reply-to address	<div> <div>Start Here</div> In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Reply to Settings ➔ (●) ➔ See below </div> Designating Switch On/Off ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) ➔ Select method ➔ (●) ➔ Select/enter address ➔ (●)
Changing Server sent message storage limit	Editing Edit Address ➔ (●) ➔ Edit ➔ (●)
	In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Messaging Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Expiry Time ➔ (●) ➔ Select option ➔ (●) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available for SMS only.

■ Attachments

Changing attached image size	Select attached file ➔ (⊖) ➔ Resize Picture ➔ (●) ➔ Select size ➔ (●) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May be unavailable for some images.
Capturing/recording and attaching	<div> <div>Start Here</div> Select attachment field ➔ (●) ➔ See below </div> Still Images Picture ➔ (●) ➔ Take Picture ➔ (●) ➔ (●) to shoot ➔ (●)
	Video Video ➔ (●) ➔ Record Video ➔ (●) ➔ (●) to start recording ➔ (●) to stop ➔ Accept ➔ (●) ➔ Select storage media ➔ (●)
	Sounds Sound ➔ (●) ➔ Record Voice ➔ (●) ➔ (●) to start recording ➔ (●) to stop ➔ Accept ➔ (●) ➔ Select storage media ➔ (●)

Set Auto Play File	Select attached file ➔ (⊖) ➔ Set Auto Play File ➔ (●) ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ (●) ➔ On ➔ (●) ➔ Enter Message ➔ (●) ➔ Enter comment ➔ (●) ➔ (⊖) ➔ (⊙) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not available for PC Mail.
--------------------	---

■ Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic Mail from templates	Opening Templates from Messaging Menu (⊖) ➔ Templates ➔ (●) ➔ Select template ➔ (●) ➔ Complete message ➔ (⊙) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Template size may change when used for creating messages.
	Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window In Mail Composition window, (⊖) ➔ Launch Template ➔ (●) ➔ Select template ➔ (●) ➔ Complete message ➔ (⊙) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Open a template before entering message text.
Changing text color, size & effect	In text entry window, (⊞) (Long) ➔ (⊖) ➔ Select start point ➔ (●) ➔ Highlight text range ➔ (●) ➔ COLOR, SIZE or EFFECT ➔ (●) ➔ Set ➔ (●)
Changing text color	In text entry window, (⊞) (Long) ➔ COLOR ➔ (●) ➔ Select color ➔ (●) ➔ Enter text
Inserting background sound	<div> <div>Start Here</div> In text entry window, (⊞) (Long) ➔ INSERT ➔ (●) ➔ See below </div> Inserting BGM Sound ➔ (●) ➔ Select folder ➔ (●) ➔ Select file ➔ (●)
	Deleting Delete BGM ➔ (●) ➔ Yes ➔ (●)



Inserting Flash® file	In text entry window, (Long) ➔ INSERT ➔ ➔ Flash ➔ ➔ Select file ➔
Previewing Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, ➔ Preview ➔ • When Graphic Mail window is open, press first.
Deleting Flash® file	In text entry window after inserting Flash® file, move cursor before Flash® icon ➔ ➔ Delete • When Graphic Mail window is open, press first.
Inserting horizontal line	In text entry window, (Long) ➔ INSERT ➔ ➔ Line ➔
Flashing text	Start Here In text entry window, (Long) ➔ See below
	Flashing EFFECT ➔ ➔ Blink ➔ ➔ Blink On ➔ ➔ Enter text
	Canceling ➔ Select start point ➔ ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ➔ EFFECT ➔ ➔ Blink ➔ ➔ Blink Off ➔
Aligning text (left/right/center)	In text entry window, (Long) ➔ EFFECT ➔ ➔ Alignment ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ ➔ Enter text

Receiving/Opening Messages

Receiving

Accessing new mail out of Standby	(Long)
Retrieving new S! Mail manually	➔ • When a PC Mail Account exists, select S! Mail and press . • Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.
Retrieving Server Mail list	➔ Server Mail Box ➔ ➔ Mail List ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Retrieving remaining portions	Via Mail Notice In message list, select Mail Notice ➔ ➔ ➔
	Via Server Mail List ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ ➔ Mail List ➔ ➔ Select message ➔ • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press .
Retrieving all Server Mail	Start Here ➔ Server Mail Box ➔ ➔ See below
	Directly from Server Retrieve All ➔
	Via Server Mail List Mail List ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔ Retrieve All ➔ • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press .



■ Message Window

Saving attachments to Data Folder	In message window, select file ➤ ➤ Save to Data Folder ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤ Save here ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For templates, Save as Template appears. (Omit file name entry step.)
Installing attached widgets	In message window, select file ➤ ➤ Install Attach ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤
Using attachments	<div>Start Here</div> In message window, select file ➤ ➤ See below As Wallpaper Set as Wallpaper ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤ Save here ➤ ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option. As Ringtone/Ringvideo Set as Ringtone or Set as Ring Video ➤ ➤ Enter name ➤ ➤ Save here ➤ ➤ Select item ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For For New Message or For New PC Mail, enter ring time and press .
Playing slides	In message window, ➤ Slide Play ➤ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A slide consists of message text with attachments.

Saving to Phone Book

Saving Sender Address

In message window, ➤ **Save Address** ➤ ➤ **Select number or mail address** ➤ ➤ **As New Entry** ➤ ➤ **Complete other fields** ➤
 • To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.

Saving Linked Info

In message window, select number or mail address ➤ ➤ **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** ➤ ➤ **As New Entry** ➤ ➤ **Complete other fields** ➤
 • To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.

Using linked info

Dialing Numbers

In message window, select number ➤ ➤ **Call** or **Video Call** ➤

Sending Messages

In message window, select number or mail address ➤ ➤ **Create Message** ➤ ➤ **S! Mail** or **SMS** ➤ ➤ **Complete message** ➤
 • For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.

Accessing Internet Sites

In message window, select URL ➤ ➤ **Yes** ➤
 • Select **PC Site Br.** to connect via PC Site Browser.

Copying text

Start Here

In message window, ➤ **Copy** ➤ ➤ **See below**

Sender/Recipient Number/Address

Address ➤ ➤ **Select number/address** ➤

Subject or Message Text

Subject or **Message Text** ➤ ➤ **Select first character** ➤ ➤ **Highlight text range** ➤

Looking up message text words in dictionaries

In message window, ➤ **Copy & Search Dict.** ➤ ➤ **Select first character** ➤ ➤ **Highlight text range** ➤ ➤ **Select dictionary** ➤ ➤ **Search** ➤ ➤ **Select word** ➤



Jumping to message top/ bottom	In message window, ➔ View Settings ➔ ➔ Scroll Jump ➔ ➔ Jump to Top or Jump to Bottom ➔
Deleting attachments	In message window, select file ➔ ➔ Remove File ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Reporting unsolicited message sources as spammers	In message window, ➔ Report Spam ➔ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Signature is not inserted automatically. • Not available for PC Mail.

■ Replying

Selecting mail type/quote option	In message window, ➔ Reply ➔ ➔ Select type/option ➔ ➔ Complete message ➔
Opening received message for reference	In message window, ➔ Rep. with View ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ ➔ Complete message ➔
Replying quickly using fixed text	Editing Quick Reply Text ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ General Settings ➔ ➔ Send/Compose ➔ ➔ Set Quick Reply ➔ ➔ Select text ➔ ➔ Edit ➔ Using Quick Reply In message window, (Long) ➔ Select text ➔

Replying to messages automatically

Start Here ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **General Settings** ➔ ➔ **Send/Compose** ➔ ➔ **Auto Reply** ➔ ➔ See below

Saving Recipients

Address Setting ➔ ➔ **Select blank entry** ➔ ➔ **Select method** ➔ ➔ **Select/enter number/address** ➔ ➔ **Select mode** ➔

(☐/☒) ➔ ➔

- Select saved recipient and press to edit number/address.

Editing Reply Text

Reply Message ➔ ➔ **Select mode** ➔ ➔ **Enter text** ➔

- Edit text for each mode.

Activating Auto Reply

Switch On/Off ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

- Replies are sent via S! Mail.
- Replies are sent to the same sender only once after each time Auto Reply is activated.
- Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or while abroad.



■ Message List

Selecting multiple messages	<p>Selecting</p> <p>In message list, (v) ➔ Select message ➔ (✓) (✓)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To uncheck, press (●) again.
	<p>Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once</p> <p>In message list, (≡) ➔ Manage Msg. ➔ (●) ➔ Check in Block ➔ (●)</p>
	<p>Unchecking All</p> <p>In message list, (≡) ➔ Unselect All ➔ (●)</p>
Color-tagging messages	<p>In message list, (≡) ➔ Manage Msg. ➔ (●) ➔ Color Label ➔ (●) ➔ Select color ➔ (●)</p>
Sorting messages	<p>In message list, (≡) ➔ View Settings ➔ (●) ➔ Sort ➔ (●) ➔ Select option ➔ (●)</p>
Opening sender/recipient details	<p>In message list, select message ➔ (≡) ➔ View Mail Address ➔ (●) ➔ Select sender or recipient ➔ (●)</p>
Checking memory status	<p>(≡) ➔ Memory Status ➔ (●) ➔ Select item ➔ (●)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press (v) to check memory status by service (SMS & SI Mail or PC Mail). • USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.
Opening properties	<p>In message list, select message ➔ (≡) ➔ Message Details ➔ (●)</p>
Changing template name display	<p>(≡) ➔ Templates ➔ (●) ➔ (≡) ➔ Item Displayed ➔ (●) ➔ Select item ➔ (●)</p>

<p>Saving SMS messages to USIM Card</p>	<p>In message list, select SMS message ➡ ☰ ➡ Manage Msg. ➡ ☑ ➡ SIM Sync ➡ ☑</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for compatible USIM Cards.
<p>Changing received message status (read/unread)</p>	<p>In message list, select message ➡ ☰ ➡ Manage Msg. ➡ ☑ ➡ Switch to Unread or Switch to Read ➡ ☑</p>
<p>Deleting Messages</p>	
<p>Deleting messages</p>	<p>One Message</p> <p>In message list, select message ➡ ☰ ➡ Delete ➡ ☑ ➡ Yes ➡ ☑</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, delete an open message.
	<p>All Messages</p> <p>In message list, ☰ ➡ Manage Msg. ➡ ☑ ➡ Delete All ➡ ☑ ➡ Delete All or Except Locked Msg. ➡ ☑ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ☑</p>
	<p>All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages</p> <p>In message list (Drafts or Unsent Messages), ☰ ➡ Delete All ➡ ☑ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ☑</p>
<p>Deleting Server Mail via Mail Notice</p>	<p>In message list, select Mail Notice ➡ ☰ ➡ Delete ➡ ☑ ➡ Select option ➡ ☑ ➡ Yes ➡ ☑</p>



Deleting Server Mail via Server Mail list	Start Here ➡ ➡ Server Mail Box ➡ ➡ Mail List ➡ ➡ ➡ See below • If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●.
	One Message Select message ➡ ➡ ➡ Delete ➡ ➡ ➡ Yes ➡ ➡ ➡ ●
	All Messages ➡ ➡ ➡ Delete All ➡ ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ➡ ➡ Yes ➡ ➡ ➡ ●
Deleting all Server Mail directly from Server	Start Here ➡ ➡ ➡ Server Mail Box ➡ ➡ ➡ Delete All ➡ ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ➡ ➡ See below
	All Retrieved Messages Except New Msg. ➡ ➡ ➡ ●
	All Messages Delete All ➡ ➡ ➡ ●

■ Folders

Moving messages manually	In message list, select message ➡ ➡ ➡ Manage Msg. ➡ ➡ ➡ Move to Folder ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ ● • If sort messages confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.
Renaming folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ Rename ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Enter name ➡ ➡ ➡ ● • Available in Chat Folder list as well.

Deleting folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ Delete ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ➡ ➡ ● • If delete message confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●. • When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
Adding folders	In folder list, ➡ ➡ ➡ Create New Folder ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Enter name ➡ ➡ ➡ ● • Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Moving folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ Relocate Folder ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Select target location ➡ ➡ ➡ ●
Changing status of all messages within folders to read	In folder list, select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ To All Read ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Yes ➡ ➡ ➡ ●
Canceling automatic deletion of messages within folders	In folder list, select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ Protect ➡ ➡ ➡ ● • To cancel protection, select Not Protect and press ● in the steps above.
Canceling Secret	Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select folder ➡ ➡ ➡ Unset Secret ➡ ➡ ➡ ● ➡ ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ➡ ➡ ●



■ Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting messages	In folder list, select folder → ☰ → Classify → ● • Available in Chat Folder list as well.
Sorting spam by setting keys	☰ → Settings → ● → General Settings → ● → Anti Spam Measures → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Individual(Common) → ● (✓) → ☰ → Select blank entry → ● → Select key → ● → Select/enter number/address/subject → ● → ✓ → ✓ → ●
Editing/deleting sort keys	[Start Here] In folder list, select folder → ☰ → My Folders → ● → Select entry → See below Editing Sender/Recipient Key ☰ → Replace → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → ✓ Editing Subject Key ● → Edit → ● → ✓ Deleting an Entry ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ● → ✓ Deleting All Entries ☰ → Clear All → ● → Yes → ● → ✓

■ Chat Folders

Deleting folders	☰ → Chat Folder → ● → Select folder → ☰ → Delete Folder → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● • If delete message confirmation appears, choose Yes and press ●. • When Double Number is active, corresponding folders in other modes are also deleted.
------------------	--






























Deleting all messages	☰ → Chat Folder → ● → Select folder → ● → ☰ → Manage Msg. → ● → Delete All → ● → Yes → ●
Resetting Chat Folders	☰ → Chat Folder → ● → ☰ → Reset → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●

■ Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups	☰ → Settings → ● → Set Mail Group → ● → Select Group → ☰ → Edit Name → ● → Enter name → ● → Yes → ●
Deleting Mail Groups/Group members	[Start Here] ☰ → Settings → ● → Set Mail Group → ● → Select Group → See below Mail Groups ☰ → Delete → ● → Yes → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● Group Members ● → Select member → ☰ → Remove Entry → ● → Yes → ● → ✓ • Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.
Changing Mail Group members	☰ → Settings → ● → Set Mail Group → ● → Select Group → ● → Select member → ☰ → Re-assign Entry → ● → Select entry → ● → Select number or mail address → ● → Yes → ● → ✓










Using Messages










Forwarding messages	<p>In message window,  ➔ Forward ➔  ➔</p> <p>Select recipient field ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔  ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Attached files are forwarded. To forward SMS messages, select S! Mail or SMS and press .
Sending from Drafts	<p> ➔ Drafts ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔</p> <p>Complete message ➔ </p>
Sending unsent messages	<p> ➔ Start Here ➔ Unsent Messages ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔ See below</p> <p>Sending without Editing</p> <p>Resend ➔ </p> <p>Edit & Send</p> <p>Edit ➔  ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
Using sent messages	<p> ➔ Sent Messages ➔  ➔ Select folder ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔ Edit & Send ➔  ➔ Complete message ➔ </p>
Saving schedules from message list	<p>In message list, select message ➔  ➔ Manage Msg. ➔  ➔ Save to Calendar ➔  ➔ Enter subject ➔  ➔ Enter start/end date/time ➔  ➔ Complete other fields ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Source message is accessible from schedule window (via Related Mail in Options menu).


Forwarding Server Mail

Via Mail Notice






In message list, select Mail Notice ➔  ➔ **Forward** ➔  ➔ **Notifi. Forward** (forward Mail Notice text only) or **Remote Forward** ➔  ➔ Select recipient field ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔  ➔ 


Via Server Mail List

 ➔ **Server Mail Box** ➔  ➔ **Mail List** ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔ **Remote Forward** ➔  ➔ Select recipient field ➔  ➔ Select method ➔  ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔  ➔ 

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

Opening Server Mail properties

 ➔ **Server Mail Box** ➔  ➔ **Mail List** ➔  ➔ Select message ➔  ➔ **Message Details** ➔ 

- If retrieve list confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

Checking Server Mail message count and volume

 ➔ **Server Mail Box** ➔  ➔ **Mailbox Volume** ➔ 



General Settings

Changing message window scroll unit	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ Scroll Unit ➔ ● ➔ Select unit ➔ ●
Changing message list view	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ Message List View ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Address View ➔ ● ➔ Show All ➔ ●
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ Received Msg. View ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Sent Msg. View ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● • Folder View by Account is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.
Selecting automatic deletion option for received messages	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Auto Delete ➔ ● ➔ Received Msg. ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Auto Delete ➔ ● ➔ Sent Messages ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Not Auto Del ➔ ●
Changing spam report recipient	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Report Spam ➔ ● ➔ Edit address ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

General Settings (Send/Compose)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Send/Compose ➔ ● ➔ Delivery Report ➔ ● ➔ ➔ On ➔ ● • Available when messaging to SoftBank handsets.
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Send/Compose ➔ ● ➔ Auto Resend ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Off ➔ ●
Designating/editing reply-to address	[Start Here] ⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ Send/Compose ➔ ● ➔ Reply to Settings ➔ ● ➔ See below Designating Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ● ➔ Select method ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter address ➔ ● Editing Edit Address ➔ ● ➔ Edit ➔ ●
Selecting quote option	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Send/Compose ➔ ● ➔ Reply With Text ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Hiding progress bar while sending messages	⊞ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ General Settings ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Send/Compose ➔ ● ➔ Sending Status ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Off(Background) ➔ ●



Deleting Permitted List entries	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Send/Compose ➤ Restrictions Setting ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ Individual Address ➤ Permitted List ➤ Select entry ➤ See below
	One Entry Delete ➤ Yes ➤
	All Entries Clear All ➤ Yes ➤

General Settings (Receive)

Message Notice & Animation View

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Message Notice ➤ Secret Folder ➤ No Response ➤
Changing alerts for messages received during handset use	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Message Notice ➤ See below Showing New Message Window On Active Screen ➤ On ➤
	Selecting Scrolling Notice Option View Setting ➤ Select option ➤
	Muting Alert Sound Alert Sound ➤ Off ➤
Disabling Animation View	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Animation View ➤ Off ➤

Feeling Mail

Hiding graphics above Information window	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Link to Feeling ➤ Idle Screen Info. ➤ Off ➤
Changing illumination	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Link to Feeling ➤ See below Illumination Option Switch On/Off ➤ Link to Sound or Off ➤ • For Link to Sound, press again. Color Light Color ➤ Select category ➤ Select color ➤ Key Illumination Pattern Key Pattern ➤ Select item ➤ Select pattern ➤
	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Link to Feeling ➤ Vibration Pattern ➤ Select option ➤
	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ General Settings ➤ Receive ➤ Link to Feeling ➤ Ringtone ➤ See below Muting Ringer Switch On/Off ➤ Off ➤ Changing Ringtones Assign Tone ➤ Select category ➤ Select folder ➤ Select tone/file ➤



S! Mail Settings

Automatic Retrieval

Deleting addresses/ domains specified for complete message retrieval	Start Here ➤ Settings ➤ S! Mail Settings ➤ Message DL(Japan) or Message DL(Abroad) ➤ Auto (Specify) ➤ See below
	One Entry (Mail Address) Individual Address ➤ Select entry ➤ Delete ➤ Yes ➤ Yes
	All Entries (Mail Address) Individual Address ➤ Select entry ➤ Clear All ➤ Yes ➤ Yes
	One Entry (Domain) Receive by the Domain ➤ Select entry ➤ Delete ➤ Yes ➤ Yes
	All Entries (Domain) Receive by the Domain ➤ Select entry ➤ Clear All ➤ Yes ➤ Yes

Attachments

Disabling image auto-resize	Settings ➤ S! Mail Settings ➤ Picture Appearance ➤ Normal ➤ • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Enabling/disabling image auto-open or sound auto-play	Settings ➤ S! Mail Settings ➤ Auto Play File ➤ Pictures or Sounds ➤ On or Off ➤ • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Attaching captured/recorded files unsaved	Settings ➤ S! Mail Settings ➤ Send File Settings ➤ Attach Only ➤ • Setting applies to PC Mail as well.
Message Size	
Limiting outgoing S! Mail message size	Settings ➤ S! Mail Settings ➤ Create Msg. Size ➤ 300KB or 1MB ➤ • Images are resized automatically when message size exceeds the limit upon attaching them.
Limiting incoming S! Mail message size	Settings ➤ S! Mail Settings ➤ DL Size Limit ➤ 300KB ➤ • Portions exceeding 300 KB will be deleted at Server.



PC Mail Settings	
Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	⊖ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail DL ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail DL ➤ ● ➤ All Contents ➤ ●
Retrieving new messages automatically	<p>Start Here ⊖ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail Settings ➤ ● ➤ Check New Mail ➤ ● ➤ See below</p> <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Check New Mail ➤ ● ➤ On ➤ ● ➤ Select account ➤ ● (✓) ➤ (Y) ➤ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting Check New Mail to On may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan. <p>Enabling Automatic Retrieval Abroad Abroad ➤ ● ➤ Enable ➤ ● ➤ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically retrieving messages abroad may incur high charges. <p>Changing Automatic Retrieval Interval Interval ➤ ● ➤ Select interval ➤ ●</p> <p>Disabling Automatic Retrieval during Specified Time Inactive Time ➤ ● ➤ Switch On/Off ➤ ● ➤ On ➤ ● ➤ Start Time: ➤ ● ➤ Enter start time ➤ ● ➤ End Time: ➤ ● ➤ Enter end time ➤ ●</p>
Retrieving PC Mail for specified folder	In folder list, select PC Mail folder ➤ ⊖ ➤ Retrieve New ➤ ●

Disabling automatic word wrap	⊖ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail Settings ➤ ● ➤ Word wrap ➤ ● ➤ Off ➤ ●
Retrieving complete messages from specified addresses	<p>Start Here ⊖ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail DL ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail DL ➤ ● ➤ DL All From List ➤ ⊖ ➤ See below</p> <p>Selecting Sender Types Select item ➤ ● (□/✓) ➤ (Y)</p> <p>Specifying Addresses Individual Address ➤ ⊖ ➤ Select blank entry ➤ ● ➤ Select method ➤ ● ➤ Select/enter address ➤ ● ➤ (Y)</p> <p>Specifying Domains (Direct Entry) Receive by the Domain ➤ ⊖ ➤ Select blank entry ➤ ● ➤ Direct Entry ➤ ● ➤ Enter domain ➤ ● ➤ (Y)</p>
Deleting addresses/domains specified for complete message retrieval	<p>Start Here ⊖ ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail Settings ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail DL ➤ ● ➤ PC Mail DL ➤ ● ➤ DL All From List ➤ ⊖ ➤ See below</p> <p>One Entry (Mail Address) Individual Address ➤ ⊖ ➤ Select entry ➤ ⊖ ➤ Delete ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ (Y)</p> <p>All Entries (Mail Address) Individual Address ➤ ⊖ ➤ Select entry ➤ ⊖ ➤ Clear All ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ (Y)</p> <p>One Entry (Domain) Receive by the Domain ➤ ⊖ ➤ Select entry ➤ ⊖ ➤ Delete ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ (Y)</p> <p>All Entries (Domain) Receive by the Domain ➤ ⊖ ➤ Select entry ➤ ⊖ ➤ Clear All ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ (Y)</p>



Restricting complete message retrieval by size

- ☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **PC Mail Settings** ➤ ●
 ➤ **PC Mail DL** ➤ ● ➤ **Max DL Size** ➤ ● ➤
Select account ➤ ● ➤ **Select size** ➤ ●
 • Effective when PC Mail DL is set to **All Contents** or **DL All From List**.

SMS Settings

Changing Server sent message storage limit

- ☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **SMS Settings** ➤ ● ➤
Expiry Time ➤ ● ➤ **Select option** ➤ ●

Changing SMS Server number

- Start Here** ☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **SMS Settings**
 ➤ ● ➤ **Message Center** ➤ ● ➤ **See below**

Editing

Setting1(Default) to **Setting3** ➤ ● ➤ **Edit number** ➤ ●

- Do not change Server number unless instructed to do so.

Deleting

Setting2 or **Setting3** ➤ ☰ ➤ **Delete** ➤ ● ➤
Yes ➤ ●

Activating

Setting2 or **Setting3** ➤ ☰ ➤ **Set Default** ➤ ●
 • Activated number moves to **Setting1(Default)** and shifts the others down.

Changing character encoding for composing messages

- ☰ ➤ **Settings** ➤ ● ➤ **SMS Settings** ➤ ● ➤
Char-code ➤ ● ➤ **Select encoding** ➤ ●



Sending Messages

? Cannot enter message text or attach files

- Attachment size affects text size limit. In turn, text size affects attachment size limit.

? Sending failure appears in Information window

- To resend, follow these steps:
Sending failure → **Select message** →

? Unsent message is not resent automatically

- Auto Resend makes up to two attempts to send unsent messages automatically. Resend unsent message(s) manually.

? Set Auto Play File cannot be set

- Apply to one file per message.
- Not available for Graphic Mail.
- May be unavailable for some files.

? Messaging Settings are not applied

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- Delivery Report/Priority setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.
- Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.

? Cannot set Messaging Settings

- These settings cannot be applied to a message simultaneously (select one): Set Auto Delete, Reply Request, Forward NG, Delete NG, Quiz, Set Auto Play File.

? Signature is not inserted automatically

- Auto Insert is available for S! Mail only.

? Cannot cancel sent messages

- Short messages may not be canceled.
- Set Sent Cancel is available for S! Mail only.

? Cannot send PC Mail

- Follow these steps to check User Name and Password for SMTP authentication:
 Settings → **PC Mail Settings** → **PC Mail Account** → **Select account** → **Set Sending** → **Sender Auth.** → **SMTP Auth.** → **User Name or Password** →
- Some ISPs require SMTP authentication setup in addition to Set Receiving setup.




Incoming Messages

? Handset won't ring or vibrate for some incoming messages

- Handset does not ring or vibrate for messages with Low Priority.
- Handset does not ring, vibrate or open Information window for messages filtered as spam.





? A confirmation requesting a reply appears

- To reply, choose **Yes** and press . Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

? Handset won't respond according to Feeling Mail settings

- Responses set in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder

? Message text appears distorted



- Follow these steps to change encoding:
In message window,  ➔ **View Settings** ➔  ➔ **Char-code** ➔  ➔ **Select option** ➔ 

Handling Messages

? Cannot move messages into some folders

- To move to Secret folders, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand.

? Cannot receive messages

- If  appears, memory is full; delete messages (P.4-26).
- If  appears, move to a place where signal is strong.

? S! Mail is not delivered as sent

- Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.

? Still images are not delivered as sent

- Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible. Convert JPEG files to PNG.

? Video files are not delivered as sent

- Send video files to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.



Internet Services	5-2
Service Basics	5-2
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
Using Yahoo! Keitai	5-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
Using PC Site Browser	5-4
Browsing.....	5-5
Basic Operations	5-5

Bookmarks & Saved Pages	5-7
Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages....	5-7
RSS Feeds	5-8
Updating Blogs & News.....	5-8
Additional Functions	5-9
Troubleshooting.....	5-16

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser



Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SoftBank Mobile Website (**P.15-23**).


Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.


Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Opening Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced

-  ● Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) ● Clearing authentication information (And more on **P.5-9**)
- Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication ● Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) (And more on **P.5-15**)



Using Yahoo! Keitai

Using Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu


Browse Yahoo! Keitai sites from Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu.

Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 ➔ Connection starts



Internet Page


- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press .

2 Highlight menu item ➔

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 2 to open additional links.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page]  ➔ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page]  ➔ Forward ➔ 

Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu






[Internet Page]  ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ 

User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔  ➔ 

Playing Media during Download

[Internet Page] Select file ➔ 

- Play files while they transfer from the server (progressive download) or stream media files. Save media played via progressive download as needed (streamed media cannot be saved).
- Press  or  to pause or stop playback. (Progressive download continues; press  twice during playback to stop it.)
- To resume playback, press  while paused.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while playback is paused.
- Sound is heard from Speaker/Headphones regardless of  Sound Output setting.

Using History

1 ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ➔ History ➔



2 Select record ➔ ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

Entering URLs Directly

1 ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ➔ Enter URL ➔








2 Enter URL ➔ ➔ Connection starts

- Corresponding page opens.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ Page closes

Advanced

-  Switching browsers
-  Using previously entered URLs
-  Deleting History records
-  Sorting History records (And more on P.5-9)
-  Customizing media playback settings (And more on P.5-12)

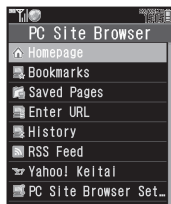


Using PC Site Browser

Browse PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges depending on subscribed price plan.

1 ● ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser** ➔ ●



2 **Homepage** ➔ ● ➔ **Connection starts**



Pointer

Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- If a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press (Y).

3 **Highlight menu item** ➔ ●

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat (S) to open additional links.

4 (O) ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] (Y) ➔ **Previous page opens**

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:

[Internet Page] (S) ➔ **Forward** ➔ ●

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page] (S) ➔ **Homepage** ➔ ●

User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➔ ● ➔ (Y)

Using History

In (2), **History** ➔ ● ➔ **Select record** ➔ ●

Entering URLs Directly

In (2), **Enter URL** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter URL** ➔ ●

Hiding Softkeys

[Internet Page] (S) ➔ **Convenient Functions** ➔ ● ➔ **Softkey Area** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Browsing in Wideview

[Internet Page] Rotate handset 90 degrees counterclockwise

- Use Multi Selector according to page orientation.

Advanced

- Switching browsers
- Using previously entered URLs
- Deleting History records
- Opening History properties
- Sorting History records
- Sending History records via mail (P.5-9)
- Showing navigation map for continuous scroll
- Changing scroll unit
- Hiding PC Site Browser messages (P.5-12)




Basic Operations

Page Browsing


Scrolling Pages

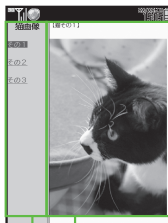
If page content continues beyond view, use  to scroll pages.

Long Press  to scroll continuously.





Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press  to switch active frame.



Frames

- In pointer navigation, point to a frame and press  to select it.
- Otherwise, use  to select one.




Viewing Single Frame

- Select frame   **Convenient Functions**   **Frame In**  
- To return, press .

Tabbed Browsing

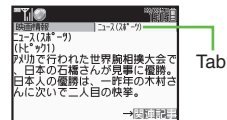
Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

Opening a New Tab



- 1 On a page, select menu item   **Tab Menu** 

  **Open in New Tab** 


- 2 **Open in New Tab** 














Switching Tabs

- 1   **(Long)**   **Select tab**



- In pointer navigation, point to a tab and press  to open it.

Closing Tabs

-   **(Long)**   **Select tab**  
-   **Tab Menu**   **Close Tab** or **Close All Other Tabs** 

Advanced

- Looking up copied words in dictionaries
- Using Web Search
- Searching current page
- Jumping to page top/bottom
- Saving files to Data Folder
- Changing Font Size
- Enlarging specific areas
- Disabling automatic image display/sound playback
- Changing scroll unit (And more on P.5-10 - 5-12)



Selecting Text

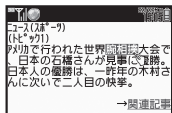
Activate pointer navigation to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or look up words in dictionaries.

- Text may not be selectable or linked page may open depending on the site or page.
- Follow these steps to use a dictionary:

1 On a page, point to first character ➡ (Long)

- Drag Mode is activated.

2 Highlight text range



3

- Text range remains unchanged even when pointer is moved.

4

- Dictionary opens with text inserted.

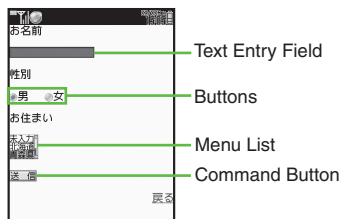
5 Search ➡ Select word, etc. ➡

Starting Over

- After ➊, point to first character ➡
➡ From ➋

Additional Page Operations

Enter text or select/execute items.



Text Entry

1 On a page, select text entry field ➡

2 Enter text ➡

- Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)

- [Internet page] Select text entry field
➡ ➡ ➡ Insert/Font Size ➡
➡ Input Memory ➡ ➡ Select text
➡

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 On a page, select menu list field ➡

2 Select item ➡

When Multiple Selection is Supported

- Select items as needed and press [決定] (Decide).

Page Item Indicators

Selection Items

Buttons ○ or boxes □ appear.

1 On a page, select button or box ➡



- ○/□ changes to ●/☑

Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

1 On a page, select command ➡



Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

- 1 On a page, ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔ ➔ **<Add New Entry>** ➔
 - **<Add New Entry>** appears in gray for unsavable pages.
- 2 Check/edit URL ➔
- 3 Check/edit title ➔
- 4 Save ➔

Opening Bookmarks

- 1 ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔



- 2 Select title ➔
 - Corresponding page opens.

Switching Bookmark Type

After 1, ➔ **Change List** ➔ ➔ **Select type** ➔

Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page] ➔ **Bookmarks** ➔ ➔ **Select title** ➔

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

- 1 On a page, ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ➔ **Save** ➔
 - **Save** appears only for savable pages.

- 2 Check/edit title ➔

Opening Saved Pages

- 1 ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔



- 2 Select page ➔
 - Corresponding page opens.

Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page] ➔ **Saved Pages** ➔ ➔ **Open List** ➔ ➔ **Select page** ➔

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Advanced

- Deleting titles ● Editing titles ● Changing title order ● Sorting titles into folders ● Deleting pages ● Editing page titles ● Changing page order (And more on P.5-12 - 5-13)



Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites.
Transmission fees apply.










Subscribing to RSS Feeds

 appears for RSS-compatible sites.










RSS Indicator

Available for PC Site Browser.

- 1 On a compatible page,  ➔ **Register In RSS Feed** ➔ 
- 2 Select feed ➔   ( / ) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔ 
- 3 **Save** ➔ 
 - Choose **Yes** to update immediately or **No** and press .





Via RSS Icons

Use RSS icons to subscribe to RSS feeds from sites that are not RSS-compatible.
Available for PC Site Browser.

- 1 On a page, select icon ➔ 
 - 2 **Yes** ➔  ➔ **Save** ➔ 
- ### Checking Updates
- Follow these steps to update all feeds:
- 1  ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ 
 - 2 **PC Site Browser** ➔  ➔ **RSS Feed** ➔ 




RSS Feed List


- 3 **Reload All** ➔  ➔ 
- 4 **Yes or No** ➔ 
- 5 **Select feed** ➔ 








Title List

- 6 **Select title** ➔ 
 - Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds

[RSS Feed List] Select feed ➔  ➔ **Reload** ➔  ➔  ➔ **Yes or No** ➔ 

Accessing Source Sites

[Title List] Select title ➔  ➔ **Select linked title** ➔  ➔ **Yes** ➔  ➔  ➔ **Yes or No** ➔ 

Advanced

-  Disabling feed updates
-  Sorting feeds into folders
-  Deleting feeds
-  Sorting feeds
-  Opening feed properties
-  Exchanging feeds with other devices
-  Sending feeds via mail (P.5-14)



Connecting & Browsing

■ General

Switching browsers	On a page, <i>Convenient Functions</i> <i>Change to PC Browser or Change to Y! Keitai</i> <i>This Page or Linked Page</i> <i>Yes or No</i>
Using previously entered URLs	Start Here <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>See below</i> <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>Enter URL</i> <i>URL Entry Log</i> <i>Select URL</i> PC Site Browser <i>PC Site Browser</i> <i>Enter URL</i> <i>URL Entry Log</i> <i>Select URL</i>

■ History

Deleting History records	Start Here <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>History</i> <i>Change to PC Browser or Change to Y! Keitai</i> <i>See below</i> One Record <i>Select record</i> <i>Delete</i> <i>Yes</i> All Records <i>Delete All</i> <i>Enter Handset Code</i> <i>Yes</i>
Opening History properties	<i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>History</i> <i>Select record</i> <i>Details</i>
Sorting History records	<i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>History</i> <i>Sort</i> <i>By Domain or By Date</i>

Sending History records via mail

- Yahoo! Keitai* *History* *Select record* *Send URL* *S! Mail or SMS* *Complete message*
- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

■ Memory Operation

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of *Browser Settings* .

PC Site Browser *PC Site Browser Settings*

Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	<i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>Browser Settings</i> <i>Memory Operation</i> <i>Delete Cache</i> <i>Yes</i>
Clearing cookies	<i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>Browser Settings</i> <i>Memory Operation</i> <i>Delete Cookies</i> <i>Yes</i>
Clearing authentication information	<i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> <i>Browser Settings</i> <i>Memory Operation</i> <i>Delete Auth Info</i> <i>Yes</i>



Page Operations

■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Using linked info	Dialing Numbers On a page, highlight number → ● → <i>Call</i> or <i>Video Call</i> → ●
	Sending Messages On a page, highlight number or mail address → ● → <i>Create Message</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ∇
Copying text	On a page, ☹ → <i>Copy Text</i> → ● → Select first character → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ●
Looking up copied words in dictionaries	On a page, ☹ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Copy & Search Dict.</i> → ● → Select first character → ● → <i>Highlight text range</i> → ● → Select dictionary → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → Select word, etc. → ●
Using Web Search	On a page, ☹ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Web Search</i> → ● → Enter search text → ●
Searching current page	On a page, ☹ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Search</i> → ● → Enter search text → ● • Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.
Jumping to page top/bottom	On a page, ☹ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Jump In Page</i> → ● → <i>Page Top</i> or <i>Page Bottom</i> → ●
Opening page properties	On a page, ☹ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Details</i> → ● → Select item → ●
Sending URLs via mail	On a page, ☹ → <i>Convenient Functions</i> → ● → <i>Send URL</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail</i> or <i>SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ∇ • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Handling Flash® files

[Start Here] On a page, ☹ → *Convenient Functions* → ● → *Flash® Menu* → ● → See below

Pausing/Playing

Pause, Resume or *Replay* → ●

Selecting Image Quality

Quality → ● → Select option → ●

Saving files to Data Folder

[Start Here] On a page, ☹ → *Save Items* → ● → See below

Files on Page

Select file → ● → *Save* → ● → Enter name → ● → *Save here* → ●

- Some files are saved automatically.
- End memory-consuming operations (TV recording, etc.) beforehand.
- Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.

Background Images

Save Background Image → ● → *Save* → ● → Enter name → ● → *Save here* → ●

Updating page content

On a page, ☹ → *Reload* → ●
 • To update content in Saved Pages, open a page and follow the steps above.

Changing encoding to read garbled text

On a page, ☹ → *Settings* → ● → *Char-code* → ● → Select option → ●

Opening function shortcuts

On a page, ☹ → *Help* → ●



■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing Font Size	On a page, 3 (Long) to enlarge or 1 (Long) to reduce
--------------------	--

■ PC Site Browser

Switching view	On a page, ⊞ ➔ <i>PC Screen or Small Screen</i> ➔ ⊞ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.
Zooming on pages (Zoom Factor)	On a page, 3 (Long) to enlarge or 1 (Long) to reduce
Jumping to specific locations	On a page, 5 (Long) ➔ Quick Movement map appears ➔ Select target location ➔ ⊞
Enlarging specific areas	On a page, point to area ➔ 7 (Long) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use ⊞ to move pointer in enlarged view; highlight item and press ⊞ to execute it. To close enlarged view, press a key other than ⊞.

Internet Page Settings

■ Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ **⊞**.

PC Site Browser ➔ **⊞** ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➔ **⊞**

Disabling automatic image display/sound playback	Start Here ⊞ ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ⊞ ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ⊞ ➔ Downloads ➔ ⊞ ➔ See below Image Display <i>Images</i> ➔ ⊞ ➔ <i>Do not Show</i> ➔ ⊞ Sound Playback <i>Sounds</i> ➔ ⊞ ➔ <i>Do not Play</i> ➔ ⊞
Changing Font Size	⊞ ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ⊞ ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ⊞ ➔ Font Size ➔ ⊞ ➔ Select size ➔ ⊞
Using pointer navigation	Start Here ⊞ ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ⊞ ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ⊞ ➔ Cursor Settings ➔ ⊞ ➔ See below Activating <i>Cursor Mode Settings</i> ➔ ⊞ ➔ <i>Normal Mode</i> ➔ ⊞ Changing Pointer Speed <i>Speed Settings</i> ➔ ⊞ ➔ Select speed ➔ ⊞
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	⊞ ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ⊞ ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ⊞ ➔ Download to ➔ ⊞ ➔ Prefer Card ➔ ⊞ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.

■ Yahoo! Keitai

Changing scroll unit	⊞ ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ⊞ ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ⊞ ➔ Scroll Unit ➔ ⊞ ➔ Select unit ➔ ⊞
----------------------	---



■ PC Site Browser

Showing navigation map for continuous scroll	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Settings</i> → ● → <i>Page Navigation</i> → ● → On → ●
Changing scroll unit	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Settings</i> → ● → <i>Scroll Unit</i> → ● → Select unit → ●
Hiding PC Site Browser messages	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i> → ● → <i>Warning Message</i> → ● → <i>PC Site Browser</i> or <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → Off → ●

Streaming & Progressive Download

■ General

Customizing media playback settings	[Start Here] During playback, ⊖ → <i>Settings</i> → ● → See below
	Changing Playback Size <i>Display Size</i> → ● → Select size → ● • Playback size may not change depending on file.
	Setting Backlight Status <i>Backlight</i> → ● → Select option → ● • Selecting <i>Normal Settings</i> applies Display Backlight settings.
	Adjusting Sound Effects <i>Sound Effects</i> → ● → Select effect → ●

■ Streaming

Streaming from Media Player	[Start Here] ● → <i>Media Player</i> → ● → <i>Streaming</i> → ● → See below
	Resuming from Stopped Point <i>Last Played</i> → ●
	Using Bookmarks <i>Bookmarks</i> → ● → Select title → ●
	Using History <i>History</i> → ● → Select record → ●

Bookmarks

Deleting titles	[Start Here] ● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Bookmarks</i> → ● → See below
	One Title Select title → ⊖ → <i>Delete</i> → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●
	All Titles ⊖ → <i>Delete All</i> → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → <i>Yes</i> → ●
Editing titles	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Bookmarks</i> → ● → Select title → ⊖ → <i>Edit</i> → ● → <i>Title:</i> → ● → Enter title → ● → ⏏
Editing bookmarked URLs	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Bookmarks</i> → ● → Select title → ⊖ → <i>Edit</i> → ● → <i>URL:</i> → ● → Edit → ● → ⏏
Sending bookmarked URLs via mail	● → <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → ● → <i>Bookmarks</i> → ● → Select title → ⊖ → <i>Send</i> → ● → <i>As</i> <i>Message</i> → ● → <i>S! Mail or SMS</i> → ● → <i>Complete message</i> → ⏏ • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.



Changing title order	● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Bookmarks ➤ ● ➤ Select title ➤ ☰ ➤ Change Order ➤ ● ➤ Select target location ➤ ●
Opening title properties	● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Bookmarks ➤ ● ➤ Select title ➤ ☰ ➤ Details ➤ ●
Sorting titles into folders	[Start Here] ● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Bookmarks ➤ ● ➤ See below
	Creating Folders ☰ ➤ Create Folder ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ●
	Moving to Folders Select title ➤ ☰ ➤ Move ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ● ➤ Move ➤ ●
	Moving from Folders Select folder ➤ ● ➤ Select title ➤ ☰ ➤ Move ➤ ● ➤ Move ➤ ●
	Renaming Folders Select folder ➤ ☰ ➤ Rename ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ●
	Deleting All Titles within a Folder Select folder ➤ ● ➤ ☰ ➤ Delete All ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●
	Deleting Folders Select folder ➤ ☰ ➤ Delete ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●

Saved Pages

Deleting pages	[Start Here] ● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Saved Pages ➤ ● ➤ See below One Page Select page ➤ ☰ ➤ Delete ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●
	All Pages ☰ ➤ Delete All ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●
	● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Saved Pages ➤ ● ➤ Select page ➤ ☰ ➤ Rename ➤ ● ➤ Enter title ➤ ●
Editing page titles	
Changing page order	● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Saved Pages ➤ ● ➤ Select page ➤ ☰ ➤ Change Order ➤ ● ➤ Select target location ➤ ●
Opening page properties	● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Saved Pages ➤ ● ➤ Select page ➤ ☰ ➤ Details ➤ ●
Switching page list view	● ➤ Yahoo! Keitai ➤ ● ➤ Saved Pages ➤ ● ➤ Select page ➤ ☰ ➤ List View or Preview View ➤ ●



RSS Feeds

Disabling feed updates	<p> → Yahoo! Keitai → → PC Site Browser → → RSS Feed → → Select feed → → Manage RSS Feed → → Restrict Update → </p>
Sorting feeds into folders	<p> → Yahoo! Keitai → → PC Site Browser → → RSS Feed → → See below </p> <p>Creating Folders</p> <p> → Manage RSS Feed → → Create Folder → → Enter name → </p> <p>Moving to Folders</p> <p> Select feed → → Manage RSS Feed → → Move → → Select folder → → Move → </p> <p>Renaming Folders</p> <p> Select folder → → Manage RSS Feed → → Rename → → Enter name → </p> <p>Deleting Folders</p> <p> Select folder → → Delete → → Enter Handset Code → → Yes → </p>
	<p> → Yahoo! Keitai → → PC Site Browser → → RSS Feed → → See below </p> <p>One Entry</p> <p> Select feed → → Delete → → Yes → </p>
	<p>All Entries</p> <p> → Manage RSS Feed → → Delete All → → Enter Handset Code → → Yes → </p> <p> • Alternatively, perform Delete RSS Feed List in Memory Operation (PC Site Browser Settings) to delete all feeds. </p>
	<p> → Yahoo! Keitai → → PC Site Browser → → RSS Feed → → See below </p>
Deleting feeds	<p> → Yahoo! Keitai → → PC Site Browser → → RSS Feed → → See below </p>

Sorting feeds

→ **Yahoo! Keitai** → → **PC Site Browser** → → **RSS Feed** → → **Sort** → → **Select option** →

Opening feed properties

→ **Yahoo! Keitai** → → **PC Site Browser** → → **RSS Feed** → → **Select feed** → → **Details** →

Exchanging feeds with other devices

→ **Yahoo! Keitai** → → **PC Site Browser** → → **RSS Feed** → → **See below**

Exporting All Feeds

Export All → → **Select storage media** →

Importing (Adding Feeds)

Import → → **Select file** → → **As New Items** → → **Yes or No** →

Importing (Overwriting Existing Feeds)

Import → → **Select file** → → **Delete All** → → **Enter Handset Code** → → **Yes** → → **Yes or No** →

Sending feeds via mail

→ **Yahoo! Keitai** → → **PC Site Browser** → → **RSS Feed** → → **Select feed** → → **Manage RSS Feed** → → **As Message** → → **Complete message** →



Security Settings

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

PC Site Browser ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➔ ●

Disabling manufacture number auto send for authentication	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Manufacture Number ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
Disabling referer information delivery to the Server	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Send ➔ ● ➔ Referer ➔ ● ➔ Not Send ➔ ●
Enabling/disabling cookies	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Cookies ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Selecting script execution option	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Script Settings ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●
Hiding confirmations before entering/exiting secure pages	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Secure Prompt ➔ ● ➔ Do not Show ➔ ●
Opening electronic certificates saved on handset	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Security Settings ➔ ● ➔ Root Certificates ➔ ● ➔ Select certificate ➔ ●

Changing validity of entered user ID/password

- ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Keep Auth Info** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●
- **Per Browsing** retains entered user ID/password during browsing sessions. **On** retains such authentication information even after turning handset off.
 - Authentication information may not be retained depending on the site.

Enabling/disabling Ajax (for asynchronous communication)

- ➔ **Yahoo! Keitai** ➔ ● ➔ **Browser Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Security Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Restrict Ajax** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Resetting

For PC Site Browser, perform the following sequence instead of **Browser Settings** ➔ ●.

PC Site Browser ➔ ● ➔ **PC Site Browser Settings** ➔ ●

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Initialized Browser ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
Restoring default handset settings	● ➔ Yahoo! Keitai ➔ ● ➔ Browser Settings ➔ ● ➔ Reset Settings ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●



Connecting & Browsing

? What is the bar at Display bottom?

- This is a data progress bar; the number beside it indicates transmitted (green) or received (red) data.

Page Operations

? Internet page does not open completely

- Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close other tabs.

? Text overlaps

- The site may be designed for browsing on PCs; try ***Tiny*** font size.
- Text may overlap when Zoom Factor is used; adjust scale.

? Cannot access other functions while browsing the Internet

- When switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser (☐ appears), additional function activation is disabled; close either browser and retry.



Digital TV	6-2
Basics.....	6-2
Area Setup.....	6-3
Watching TV	6-4
Obtaining Program Information.....	6-7
Recording/Playing.....	6-8
Recording Programs.....	6-8
Playing Recorded Programs.....	6-9

TV Timer	6-10
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer	6-10
Time Shift	6-11
Time Shift Recording & Playback...	6-11
Additional Functions	6-12
Troubleshooting.....	6-18

6

Digital TV



Basics

935SH supports One Seg terrestrial digital television broadcast services developed for mobile devices in Japan.

Watch Live Television

Set up a channel list for your service area to access available programming. Capture screenshots while watching TV.

Multi Job

Watch TV in one half of Display using the other to access messaging functions, browse the Internet or open Phone Book, etc.

TV Listing (EPG) & Program Info

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

View Data Broadcasts

In addition to audio and visuals, enjoy text, program-related information and interactive services.

Record Shows/Time Shift

Record current program for later viewing on handset; if interrupted by incoming calls while watching TV, record it temporarily for delayed playback.

Reserve TV Programs

Record a show or activate TV at a specified time; enter dates & times manually or reference TV Listing electronic program guide.

Precautions

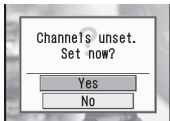
- 935SH TV is exclusively for use in Japan.
- Do not use TV while driving or cycling. Accidents may result. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004). When walking, always pay attention to your surroundings, especially near road/rail crossings, etc.
- When using TV while charging battery, separate AC Charger and Antenna to avoid interference.
- Call transmissions, incoming messages or mobile phone use in the immediate vicinity may affect audiovisual quality.
- Programming may not be viewable or record properly when:
 - Too far from or too close to broadcasting stations
 - In mountainous areas or near tall buildings
 - Aboard trains or in moving vehicles
 - Near high-voltage lines, neon lights or wireless base stations
 - Near railroad tracks or highways
 - Anywhere a jamming signal is broadcast/reception is unstable



Area Setup

When activating TV for the first time, follow these steps to set up channels by area:



1 



- Setup confirmation appears.

2 Yes ➡ 




 **Select region** ➡ 

4 Select prefecture ➡  ➡
Select locality ➡ 



- After setup, channel list appears.



- To watch TV, select **Digital TV** and press .

Watching TV without Completing Area Setup

In **3**, *No Preference* ➔ **4**

Adding Reception Areas

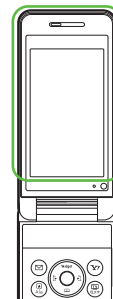
➡ ➡ ➡ **Set Channels** ➡ ➡

Change Area ➡  ➡ Select Area ➡

➡ **Set Area Info** ➡ From

Digital TV Antenna

TV Antenna is located behind Display.
Move handset to find best reception.



- Antenna Area

Advanced

👉 ● Switching reception Areas ● Renaming Areas ● Changing/disabling 📶 function ● Editing channels ● Deleting all channels in Area ● Adding new channels to Area ● Updating all channels in the Area (P.6-12)



Watching TV

Complete Area setup first.

1



TV Window

2 Use Keypad to select a channel

- Use to switch channels one by one; Long Press to find channel with stable signal automatically.

3 ➔ Yes ➔ ➔ TV ends

Watching TV in Portrait Position

- Data Broadcast text appears below TV image.

Incoming Calls

- Press to answer calls.

When Answering Voice Calls with Memory Card Inserted

- Current program is temporarily recorded; start playback after the call. (Time Shift)

Incoming Messages

- Double beep sounds and New Message notice appears. Long Press to access messages.

Key Assignments

Open Options Menu	
Toggle Panel On/Off	
Activate TV/Change Area	
Volume Control	
Toggle Display Size (portrait)	

Multi Selector

Multi Selector response changes with TV orientation.



(left/right)

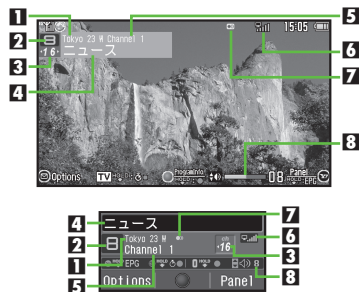
(up/down)

Advanced

- Viewing key assignments
- Searching for current program on the Internet
- Saving current channel
- Selecting an audiovisual mode
- Changing panel pattern in portrait position
- Customizing viewing options for landscape position (And more on P.6-12 - 6-14)
- Changing subtitle settings
- Changing sound settings (P.6-15)



Panel Description



1	Area name	5	Station name
2	Channel key	6	Signal strength*
3	Channel	7	Sound Channel
4	Program name	8	Volume

*The more bars the better.
Indicator position varies with display content, etc.

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

In portrait position, Data Broadcast text appears below TV image. Use to select an item and press to access program-related information and interactive services.



Data Broadcast Window

Data Broadcast Fees

- Data Broadcast information viewing is free, however, using data links/related services incurs Internet connection fees.
- A confirmation appears the first time a fee-based Network connection is established from a channel; if accepted, further Network connections are established without confirmation until the channel is changed.

Advanced

- Changing view Returning to initial window Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts Hiding Network connection confirmation Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information (And more on P.6-14)



Still Image Capture

Capture screenshots while watching TV.

- May be unavailable if TV was activated by TV Timer, etc.
- Saved images cannot be forwarded, edited, set as Wallpaper or attached to messages.

1 In TV window,

2


- Image is saved.

Opening Saved Images


- While Watching TV

[TV Window]  ➔ *Useful Func.* ➔

 ➔ *TV-Image Folder* ➔  ➔

Select image ➔ 

- From Standby

 ➔ *TV* ➔  ➔ *TV-Image Folder*

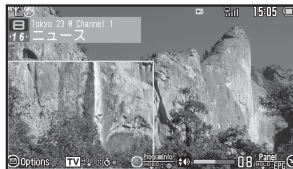
➔  ➔ Select image ➔ 

Enlarging Image Portion



















In landscape position, temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image.

May be unavailable depending on viewing style.

1 In TV window, - (Long)



- Key Assignments:

 3 	 6 	 9 
Upper left	Upper center	Upper right
 2 	 5 	 8 
Left	Center	Right
 1 	 4 	 7 
Lower left	Lower center	Lower right



Obtaining Program Information

Find program channels and times, or open program details via current channel's schedule.

TV Listing	Start EPG S! Application to find program channels and times for specified area
Program Info	Open program details via current channel's schedule; set Reservations to record shows or activate TV

TV Listing (Japanese)

1 In TV window, (Y) (Long)

- EPG application starts; refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.
- When using EPG application for the first time, a confirmation appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Program Info

1 In TV window, (M) ➡ OperateProgram ➡ (C)

2 Program Info. ➡ (C)



Program Info Window

3 Select program ➡ (C) • To return to TV window, press (EXIT) twice.

Setting Recording Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➡ (Y) ➡ (C)

- Timer entries set via Program Info are updated with program changes automatically. Program cancellations cancel corresponding Timer entries. (Poor signal conditions may inhibit updates or cancellations.)

Setting TV Timer via Program Info [Program Info Window] Select program ➡ (M) ➡ Programming ➡ (C)



Recording Programs

Clip is saved to handset (or Memory Card, if inserted).

Precautions

- Saved files cannot be forwarded or attached to messages.
- 935SH encryption technology prevents unauthorized copying or playback of Memory Card files through data encryption and authentication. Files copied from Memory Card to other cards on PC are unplayable.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only, and prohibit unauthorized reproduction/other use.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of recorded content.

Dubbing 10

- 935SH supports Dubbing 10 copy protection scheme that allows recordings to be copied from handset to Memory Card. Open file properties to check the remaining number of copies allowed to be made.

1 In TV window, (Long) ➔ Recording starts





Recording Window

- Changing volume, etc. does not affect recordings.
- When Small Light flashes yellow, reception is poor; change location to improve it: Small Light illuminates green for moderate, or blue for strong reception.


2 (Long) ➔ Recording ends

Recording Programs in Portrait

[TV Window]  (Long)

- To stop, Long Press  while recording.

Chase Play (Playing while Recording)

[Recording Window]  (Long) ➔

Playback starts ➔  (Long) ➔

Playback stops

- Watch a program from the beginning while recording it on Memory Card.

Memory/Battery Runs Low or Video

Call/S! Circle Talk Request is Accepted

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Saving Files via the Internet while Recording

- While recording programs to handset, confirm there is enough free memory before saving files.

Advanced

-  ● Recording programs without Data Broadcasts ● Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card ● Recording programs to handset only (P.6-15)

Playing Recorded Programs

- 1 In TV window, ➔ **TV Player** ➔



Video List

- indicates the file is unplayable.

- 2 Select file ➔



Playback Window

- Playback starts. (The last played file plays from where it stopped.)

- 3 (Long) ➔ **Playback stops**

Major Playback Operations

Adjust volume or temporarily enlarge a portion of widescreen image following the same operations used while watching TV.

Fast Forward	¹
Rewind	^{1, 2}
Skip Forward	
Skip Backward	
Pause ³	(in portrait)
Split File	(Long) ⁴
Set Marker	⁴
Toggle Panel On/Off	

¹Each press increases speed. To resume normal playback, press (in portrait).

²Long Press to replay. (Available when no Marker is saved.)

³In pause, use to reverse/advance frame.

⁴Not available during Time Shift playback.

Advanced

- Splitting files by specifying a time point ● Playing files repeatedly ● Playing split files ● Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders
- Checking memory status ● Renaming files ● Deleting files ● Copying files to Memory Card ● Opening file properties ● Playing files with Markers (And more on P.6-16 - 6-17)



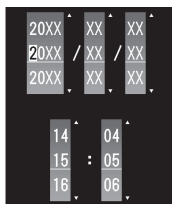
TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

1 In TV window, ➔ **Rec./ TimeShift** ➔ ➔ **Reservation List** ➔

2 ➔ **New Entry** ➔



3 **Manual** ➔ ➔ **Programming or Recording** ➔



4 Enter start date/time ➔
➔ Enter end date/time ➔

5 **Channel:** ➔ ➔ **Select channel** ➔ ➔

- If a confirmation appears, read the message and press .

Setting Timer via EPG

In , **From TV Listing** ➔

- Refer to the application's help menu for operational instructions.

Timer Recording Precautions

Confirm target channel reception; keep handset open.

- End the current operations.
- Confirm battery is adequately charged and there is enough free memory.

When TV is activated for Timer recording, audio output is redirected to Speaker/Headphones even if Sound Output is set to **Bluetooth Device**. (TV audio is muted.)

At Timer Time (TV Alarm Time)

TV and Alarm activate. Alarm ends after the set duration.



Recording starts slightly before the Timer start time and ends a few seconds after the Timer end time.

While Using Another Function

- TV activates via Multi Job and target program/recording starts. However, if Multi Job cannot activate in the current state, TV may remain off, or the current function may end automatically (unsaved images, messages, Phone Book entries, etc. may be deleted). End all active functions/applications before Timer time.

Advanced

- Opening/editing/deleting Timer details
- Opening/deleting Timer log
- Customizing TV Alarm settings
- Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer (P.6-17)



Time Shift Recording & Playback

Record current program temporarily for delayed playback.

- Recorded content is deleted after playback.
- Insert Memory Card first.

1 While watching TV, (Long) ➔ Recording starts






Recording in progress

2 While recording, (Long) ➔ Playback starts


- Playback starts from where recording was started.
- Recording and playback stop when Time Shift playback has caught up to the real-time program.

Major Playback Operations

Fast Forward	
Skip Forward	
Skip Backward	

* Press  to resume normal Time Shift playback.

Time Shift Recording Automatic Activation

When a Voice Call is answered while watching TV with Memory Card inserted, Time Shift recording starts automatically; Long Press  after the call for playback.

Advanced

-  Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation (P.6-15)



Area & Channel	
Switching reception Areas	While watching TV, ➔ Select Area ➔
Renaming Areas	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Change Area Name ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔
Changing/disabling function	<small>(Start Here)</small> While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Channel Key Setting ➔ ➔ See below
	Switching All Receivable Channels By Manual ➔
	Disabling Disable ➔
Editing channels	<small>(Start Here)</small> While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ CH Switch ➔ ➔ Select channel ➔ ➔ See below
	Switching Channel Positions Flip ➔ ➔ Select target key ➔
	Deleting Channels Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Deleting all channels in Area	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Reset Settings ➔ ➔ Yes ➔
Adding new channels to Area	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Channel Update ➔ ➔ Update Further ➔
Updating all channels in the Area	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Change Area ➔ ➔ Select Area ➔ ➔ Channel Update ➔ ➔ Update All ➔ ➔ Yes ➔

Watching

Viewing key assignments	While watching TV, ➔ Help ➔ • Also available while recording or playing programs.
Searching for current program on the Internet	While watching TV, ➔ OperateProgram ➔ ➔ Program Info. Search ➔ ➔ Search ➔ • Follow onscreen instructions.
Canceling image smoothing	While watching TV, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ Smooth Mode ➔ ➔ Off ➔
Saving current channel	While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Save Channel ➔ ➔ Select key ➔ • To overwrite a saved channel, choose Yes and press .
Selecting an audiovisual mode	While watching TV, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ AV Mode ➔ ➔ Select mode ➔ • TV reception time may shorten depending on the mode.



Adjusting current AV Mode parameters	<p>Start Here While watching TV, ➔ AV Settings ➔ ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Change AV Mode (select mode other than Link to Genre first).
	<p>Brightness</p> <p>Image ➔ ➔ Brightness ➔ ➔ Adjust level ➔ </p>
	<p>Disabling/Enabling Brightness Adjustment via Light Sensor</p> <p>Image ➔ ➔ Brightness ➔ ➔ (<input type="checkbox"/>/ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>) ➔ </p>
	<p>Adjusting Brightness Automatically by Scene</p> <p>Image ➔ ➔ Control by Scene ➔ ➔ On(Light) or On ➔ </p>
	<p>Other Image-Related Parameters</p> <p>Image ➔ ➔ Select item ➔ ➔ Adjust level ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adjust Contrast, Blackness (black level), Color (color density), Tint (skin color tone) and Sharpness.
	<p>Restoring Default Image Settings</p> <p>Image ➔ ➔ Reset ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p>
Changing panel pattern in portrait position	<p>Selecting Sound Option</p> <p>Tone ➔ ➔ Select option ➔ </p>
	<p>With TV in portrait, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Panel Type ➔ ➔ Select pattern ➔ </p>

Customizing viewing options for landscape position	<p>Start Here With TV in landscape, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Set Landscape ➔ ➔ See below</p> <p>Showing Indicators Always</p> <p>Display Icon ➔ ➔ On ➔ </p> <p>Disabling Partial Image Enlargement</p> <p>Magnify Area ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p> <p>Using Portrait Position Key Assignments</p> <p>Key Direction ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p>Switching One Seg service</p> <p>While watching TV, ➔ Set Channels ➔ ➔ Select Serv. Station ➔ ➔ Select service ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available for programs with multiple services.
	<p>Listening to audio from Speaker</p> <p>While watching TV, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Sound Output ➔ ➔ Loudspeaker ➔ </p>
Switching audio output to wireless device	<p> ➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Sound Output ➔ ➔ Bluetooth Device ➔ </p>
Using wireless Headphones	<p>While watching TV, (Long)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pair SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® headphones beforehand.
Setting TV to end automatically after a period of time	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Auto Exit ➔ ➔ Auto Exit Time ➔ ➔ Select time ➔ </p>
Disabling auto shut-off when handset is closed	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Advanced ➔ ➔ Auto Exit ➔ ➔ Close Action ➔ ➔ Watch TV ➔ </p>



Changing handset responses to incoming transmissions

[Start Here] ● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ ● ➔ See below

Showing Alarm Notice

Alarm ➔ ● ➔ Alarm Notice ➔ ●

Showing Calls or S! Circle Talk Requests

Select item ➔ ● ➔ Notice a Call ➔ ●

Showing New Message Window

Incoming Message ➔ ● ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ ●

Data Broadcast

Changing view

With Data Broadcast in portrait, (⊖) ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ● ➔ Change View (Data) ➔ ●
• To return to TV window, press (⏮).

Returning to initial window

With Data Broadcast in portrait, (⊖) ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ● ➔ Back to Top ➔ ●

Deleting information saved from Data Broadcasts

[Start Here] While watching TV, (⊖) ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ● ➔ Delete Station Data ➔ ● ➔ See below

Deleting by Station

Select station ➔ (⊖) ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Deleting All

(⊖) ➔ Delete All ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Hiding Network connection confirmation

While watching TV, (⊖) ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ● ➔ Notify Connection ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●

Sending/hiding Location Information

[Start Here] While watching TV, (⊖) ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ● ➔ Location ➔ ● ➔ See below

Sending Always

On ➔ ●

Hiding Always

Off ➔ ●

Sending manufacture number and other information

While watching TV, (⊖) ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ● ➔ Manufacture Number ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●

TV Link (Japanese)

Saving links to Data Broadcasts or related information

While viewing Data Broadcast, select link source ➔ ●

• Link navigation varies by program. Follow onscreen instructions to save links.

Using TV links

[Start Here] ● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Link ➔ ● ➔ See below

Opening TV Links

Select link ➔ ●

• Connection fees may apply.

Opening Properties

Select link ➔ (⊖) ➔ Details ➔ ●

Deleting TV links

[Start Here] ● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ TV Link ➔ ● ➔ See below

One Entry

Select link ➔ (⊖) ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

All Entries

(⊖) ➔ Delete All ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●



Subtitle & Sound

Changing subtitle settings	<p>[Start Here] While watching TV, ➔ Subtitle/Sound ➔ ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be unavailable depending on program content or viewing style (TV orientation, etc.).
	<p>Showing Subtitles Always</p> <p>Display Subtitle ➔ ➔ On ➔ </p>
	<p>Hiding Subtitles Always</p> <p>Display Subtitle ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p>Changing Subtitle Language</p> <p>Subtitle Language ➔ ➔ Language 2 ➔ </p>
	<p>Showing Subtitle Area Always</p> <p>Auto Subtitle Off ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>
	<p>Showing Subtitles at the Top</p> <p>Subtitle Position ➔ ➔ Upper ➔ </p>
	<p>Increasing Subtitle Lines</p> <p>Subtitle ScrollMode ➔ ➔ On ➔ </p>
Changing sound settings	<p>[Start Here] While watching TV, ➔ Subtitle/Sound ➔ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Selecting Sound Option</p> <p>Sound Type ➔ ➔ Sound2 ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when multiple sounds are supported.
	<p>Listening to Sub Language</p> <p>Sound Channel ➔ ➔ Sub ➔ </p>
	<p>Listening to Main & Sub Languages</p> <p>Sound Channel ➔ ➔ Main + Sub ➔ </p>

Recording

Recording programs without Data Broadcasts	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ➔ Set Recording ➔ ➔ Image Only ➔ </p>
Saving Data Broadcasts to Memory Card	<p>While watching TV, ➔ Set Broadcast Data ➔ ➔ Image Location ➔ ➔ Memory Card ➔ </p>
Disabling Time Shift recording automatic activation	<p> ➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Set Call Time Shift ➔ ➔ Off ➔ </p>
Recording programs to handset only	<p> ➔ TV ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Save Recording to ➔ ➔ Phone Memory ➔ </p>



Recorded Programs

■ Playback

Splitting files by specifying a time point	During playback, → → → → → →
Playing files repeatedly	→ → → → → →
Playing split files	→ → → → → →
Playing video files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	→ → → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, press to switch sound channels (L, R or L + R). For more operations, see P.8-5 "Video Playback Operations." In Recorder Contents file list, press to rename files, change playback mode (repeat, random, etc.), check memory status, open properties or delete files.

■ Managing

Checking memory status	→ → → → →
Renaming files	→ → → → → → →
Deleting files	<div> → → → → → </div> <p>Single Files</p> → → → <p>All Files</p> → → →
Copying files to Memory Card	→ → → → → → → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> File is moved from handset to Memory Card when the number of copies made exceeds the limit.
Moving files to Memory Card	→ → → → → → → → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Files moved to Memory Card cannot be moved back to handset.
Opening file properties	→ → → → → →



Markers

Playing files with Markers	<div>Start Here</div> During playback ➔ See below
	Skipping between Markers ⏮ (Long) or ⏭ (Long)
	Moving to Specific Markers 0:00 - 9:59
Using Marker List	<div>Start Here</div> During playback, ⏮ ➔ Set Marker ➔ ● ➔ Marker List ➔ ● ➔ See below
	Starting Playback Select number ➔ ●
	Deleting a Marker Select number ➔ ⏮ ➔ Delete ➔ ●
	Deleting All Markers ⏮ ➔ Delete All ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

TV Timer & TV Recording Timer

Opening/editing/deleting Timer details	<div>Start Here</div> While watching TV, ⏮ ➔ Rec./TimeShift ➔ ● ➔ Reservation List ➔ ● ➔ See below
	Opening Entries Select entry ➔ ●
	Editing Entries Select entry ➔ ⏮ ➔ Edit ➔ ● ➔ Edit ➔ ⏮ • Some entries may not be edited depending on the content.
	Deleting Entries Select entry ➔ ⏮ ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Opening/deleting Timer log

Start Here

While watching TV, ⏮ ➔ Rec./TimeShift ➔ ● ➔ Reservation List ➔ ● ➔ ⏮ ➔ See below

Opening Timer Log

Select record ➔ ●

Playing Recorded Programs

Select record ➔ ⏮

Deleting Records

Select record ➔ ⏮ ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Customizing TV Alarm settings

Start Here

While watching TV, ⏮ ➔ Advanced ➔ ● ➔ TV Alarm ➔ ● ➔ See below

Changing TV Alarm Time

Alarm Time ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ●

Disabling Tone/Vibration/Small Light

Tone, Vibration or Light ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●

Changing Duration

Duration ➔ ● ➔ Select time ➔ ●

Prioritizing current operation over TV Timer/TV Recording Timer

● ➔ TV ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ TV Reserve Prior ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●



Watching

? TV won't activate

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Cannot watch TV

- Reception may be poor; change location to improve it. (TV signal strength is independent of handset signal strength.)
- Handset may not have been used for a period of time; retrieve Network Information.
- TV is disabled upon subscription termination.

? Area setup does not complete correctly

- Perform **Update All** in Channel Update. Area setup may not complete correctly depending on the area or service availability.

Recording

? Ringtone does not sound as set while recording

- When a Chaku-Uta® file, etc. is set as ringtone, default ringtone may sound for incoming transmissions while recording.

TV Recording Timer

? Could not start recording. appeared as recording result

- Recording failed due to low battery/memory, active function, etc.

? Recording aborted. appeared as recording result

- Recording was interrupted due to low memory, Memory Card removal, etc.



Camera	7-2
Getting Started	7-2
Photo Camera	7-3
Capturing Still Images	7-3
Using Portrait Photography Features	7-5
Video Camera	7-7
Recording Video	7-7
Review	7-9
Opening Saved Files	7-9

Shooting Modes	7-10
Using Shooting Modes	7-10
Editing Images	7-13
Picture Editor	7-13
Composite	7-17
Printing	7-18
Printing Images	7-18
Additional Functions	7-19
Troubleshooting	7-24

7

Camera & Imaging



Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Portrait Photography

Automatically locks focus on faces, or releases shutter when subjects smile or turn their faces to camera.

Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, capture sequential/panoramic or scan images, or use long exposure.

Review

Open/play last saved mobile camera file quickly; access older files as needed.

Precautions

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with soft dry cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.



Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

Shutter Click

- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

Advanced

-  ● Opening Help ● Changing function assigned to Camera Key () (P.7-19)




Capturing Still Images

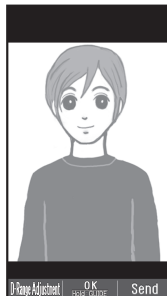
1



Photo Viewfinder

- Frames appear on detected faces. For details, see "Using Portrait Photography Features."
- Mobile Light may illuminate automatically depending on ambient light level. Press  twice to toggle setting **Off**.

2 Frame subject on Display ➔



Captured Image Window

- Shutter clicks; captured image is saved.
- Open saved images via Review or Data Folder.

3

- Viewfinder returns.

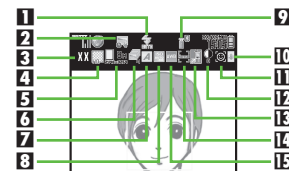
4 ➔ Camera shuts down

Sending Captured Images at High Speed via Infrared

After 2,  (Long) ➔ Yes ➔ 


- Set recipient device to ready beforehand.

Photo Viewfinder Indicators




1	Mobile Light	9	Remote Shutter
2	Auto Save	10	Shake Reducing
3	Memory	11	Focus
4	Picture Quality	12	Exposure
5	Picture Size	13	Background Save
6	Continuous Shoot		Save to
7	Long Exposure	14	Shutter Mode
8	Scene	15	White Balance
	ISO Sensitivity		
	Self-timer		

Advanced


-  ● Accessing files from Viewfinder ● Adjusting brightness ● Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots ● Changing shutter click sound ● Changing Mobile Light mode ● Changing image size ● Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions (And more on P.7-19 - 7-20)




■ Showing Large Indicators

Press  in Photo Viewfinder to show large indicators along the edges of Display.



Press  to toggle indicator view (Normal, Icon On, Icon Off and Guidance).

Accessing Settings via Indicators

 (Long) ➡ Select function ➡ 

Pre-Image Capture Operations








Zoom In/Out	
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
Change Image Size	
Change Quality	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Open Help	

Image Size & Print/Display Size

935SH Picture Size & Corresponding Print/Display Size:

8M	A3 prints
5M	A3 prints
3M	A4 prints
Full HD	Full HD display wallpaper*
Wallpaper	935SH Wallpaper
VGA	VGA display wallpaper*
QVGA	QVGA display wallpaper*

*For image specifications, see **P.15-21**

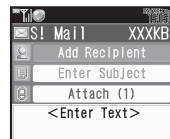
"Photo Camera."


Auto Resize Zoom


- At **8M**, Picture Size changes with zoom scale (print quality may be affected); check the size on indicator before image capture.

Sending Captured Images via Mail

1 In captured image window,



- Mail Composition window opens.
- Message size confirmation appears depending on image size or handset settings; select message size limit and press . Images may be resized automatically.

To make selection the default setting hereafter, press  to check **From now on too.** check-box.

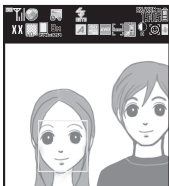
2 Complete message ➡




Using Portrait Photography Features

Locking Focus on Faces Automatically

935SH camera locks focus on faces automatically; frames appear on detected faces. (Portrait auto focus)
Detection may fail depending on face angle, distance from subject or environment.



When Multiple Faces are Detected

- Frame appears on each face; use  to select one on which to lock focus.

Capturing with Focus Lock

Lock focus on subject; camera continuously focuses on the subject even if it moves.

- Chase Focus tracks the subject's movement, and Continuous AF adjusts focus as the distance to the subject changes.
- Chase Focus distinguishes the subject by color; light-colored subjects or subjects having the same color as the background may not be tracked correctly.


1 In Photo Viewfinder, frame subject in center of Display

2



- Focus Lock is set.



- Captured image appears.
- Press  to return to Viewfinder.

Canceling Focus Lock



Advanced

-  ● Adjusting smile detection level ● Setting Center Auto Focus ● Correcting portrait auto focus images (And more on **P.7-20 - 7-21**)








Releasing Shutter upon Smile/ Face Detection

Available Shutter Modes:

Egao focus shutter	Releases shutter when subject smiles
Furimuki shutter	Releases shutter when subject turns face to camera

Adjust smile detection level as needed.

- In Photo Viewfinder,** 
 - Press  to toggle Shutter Mode between **Egao** ( appears), **Furimuki** ( appears) and **Normal**.

- Shutter is released upon smile/face detection**
 - Captured image appears.
 - Press  to return to Viewfinder.

Capturing with Tailored Settings

In Auto mode, 935SH camera detects subject type/environment (Portrait, Landscape, Night, Portrait+Night, Food, Scan Text, Scan Barcode or Scan Card) and applies suitable settings automatically. Select a specific mode for a particular subject/environment.




Examples of Specific Modes:




Baby	Brightens skin tone
Food	Yields vivid colors
Sea	Enhances the blue
Fireworks	Intensifies the black
Pet	Increases shutter speed

- In Photo Viewfinder,**   **Scene** 



Scene Menu

- Select mode**  
 - For **Auto**, select **Find Only Scene** (to disable Scan Card and Scan Barcode) or **Find Card/Barcode** and press .





- Frame subject in center of Display**  
 - Captured image appears.
 - Press  to return to Viewfinder.


Toggle Scene Menu Pages

[Scene Menu] 

Saving Custom Settings

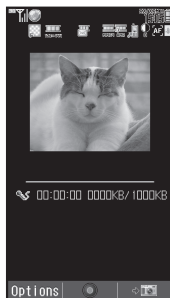
- To save the current camera settings, follow these steps:

[Scene Menu] **User Settings**   **Yes**  


 - To load saved settings, open Scene menu then select **User Settings** and press .




Recording Video



Video Viewfinder


- Omit step of pressing  if Video Camera is already active.



- Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press .)



Save Menu

- Recording stops with a tone. (To discard file and start over, press .)



- Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns.)
- Play saved video via Review, Data Folder or Media Player.



➔ **Camera shuts down**

Pausing Recording

After 2,  (press to pause/resume)

- May be unavailable depending on recording size.

Playing Unsaved Video

In 4, *Preview* ➔ 










Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.







When Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Pre-Recording Operations

Zoom In/Out	 / 
Toggle Mode	
Adjust Brightness	 / 
Change Record Size	
Change Quality	
Toggle Mobile Light Mode	
Open Help	

Advanced

-   Accessing files from Viewfinder  Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots (And more on **P.7-19**)
-  Activating Mobile Light  Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)  Changing recording time/size (And more on **P.7-22**)



Video Viewfinder Indicators



1 Mobile Light	7 Shake Reducing
2 Video Quality	8 Focus
3 Record Size	9 Exposure
4 Memory for still image capture	10 Save to
5 Record Time	11 Audio Encode
6 Self-timer	12 Video Encode

Sending Recorded Video via Mail

May not be delivered as sent depending on recording size or recipient device.

- 1 In Save menu, **Send** ➔
- 2 **Save and Send** ➔



- Mail Composition window opens.
- Message creation confirmation appears depending on file size; choose **Yes** and press to proceed. (Choose **No** to cancel attachment.) To make selection the default setting hereafter, press to check **From now on too.** check-box.

- 3 **Complete message** ➔



Opening Saved Files

Opening Last Saved File

Open/play last saved mobile camera file; access older files as needed.
Available in Standby or Viewfinder, as well as while using other functions (with some exceptions).

1 (Long)



Review Window

- To end Review, press .


Enlarging Images

After ,

Pausing/Resuming Video

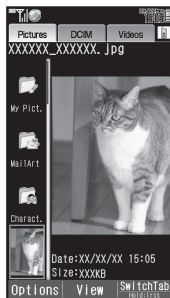
After ,  (press to pause/resume)

Opening Help


[Review Window] 

Accessing Older Files

1 In Review window,



Review File List

- File list appears.
- Press  to toggle lists.

2 Select file

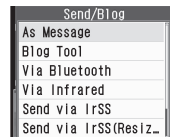
- File opens/plays.

Sending Images

Send images to blogs, etc. via mail.
Infrared and other options can also be used for sending images to other devices.
To send images to blogs, complete Blog Setting beforehand.

1 In Review file list, select image

2 Send/Blog



3 Select option

- Follow onscreen instructions.



Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/recording size.


Self-timer

1 In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ **Self-timer** ➔

2 Select time ➔



3 Frame subject on Display ➔

- After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
- To stop recording, press .
- For more, see operation descriptions on P.7-3 or P.7-7.

Releasing Shutter during Countdown After ,

Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown

- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ **Modes** ➔



Mode Menu


2 **Continuous Shoot** ➔



3 Select mode ➔ ➔ Select speed ➔

4 Frame subject on Display ➔

- After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears. (All captured images are saved.)
- When shooting speed is set to **Manual** (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat 4 for each frame.

Checking Captured Images before Saving

- Set Auto Save to **Off** beforehand. After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
 - Long Press  to save all captured images.
 - Follow these steps to save selected image:

 **Select image** ➔ 



Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ Modes ➔

2 Add Frame ➔

3 Preset Frames ➔



4 Select frame ➔

5 Frame subject on Display ➔

- Captured image is saved.
- Press to return to Viewfinder.

Using Frames in Data Folder

In , Data Folder ➔ ➔ Select frame ➔ ➔ ➔ Frame subject on Display ➔

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ Modes ➔

2 Camera Effects ➔



3 Select effect ➔

4 Frame subject on Display ➔

- Captured image is saved.
- Press to return to Viewfinder.

Long Exposure

Capture low-light shots (fireworks, night scenes, etc.) clearly.

1 In mode menu, Long Exposure ➔

2 Select time ➔

3 Frame subject on Display ➔



- Shutter is left open for an extended period of time, then captured image appears.
- Press to return to Viewfinder.



Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ **Modes** ➔

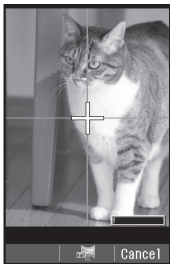
2 **Panorama/Scanner** ➔



Panorama/Scanner Menu

3 **Panorama Picture** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

4 **Frame subject on Display** ➔



- Move handset slowly to keep aligned with either of yellow lines.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

5

- Image is saved.

Checking Captured Images before Saving

- Set Auto Save to **Off** beforehand. After image capture, Save menu opens.
 - To check captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Preview** ➔
 - To save captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Save** ➔

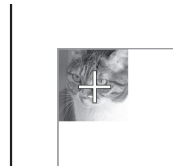
Scanning Images (Photo Camera)

1 In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ **Modes** ➔

2 **Panorama/Scanner** ➔

3 **Scanner** ➔

4 **Select size** ➔ ➔ **Frame subject on Display** ➔



- Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)

5

- Captured image is saved.

Checking Captured Images before Saving

- Set Auto Save to **Off** beforehand. After image capture, Save menu opens.
 - To check captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Preview** ➔
 - To save captured images, follow these steps in Save menu: **Save** ➔

Advanced

- Changing Panorama settings Changing Panorama image preview method (P.7-21)



Picture Editor

Picture Editor Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

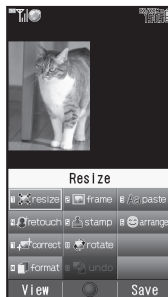
Basic Operation

1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔

2 **Pictures** ➔ ➔ **Select image** ➔

3 ➔ **Edit** ➔

4 **Picture Editor** ➔



Picture Editor Menu

5 **Select effect** ➔ ➔ **Edit**



• To start over, press .

6 **When finished**,



7 **Save as New** ➔

• To overwrite, select **Overwrite** and press . (Omit .)

8 **Enter name** ➔ ➔ **Save here** ➔

Canceling Effects

After , **Undo** ➔

■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** and press .

7

Camera & Imaging

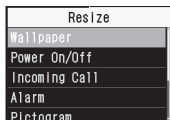


Changing Image Size

Select from preset sizes or crop image.

Resize to Preset Size

- 1 In Picture Editor menu,
Resize ➡ ●



Resize Window

- 2 Select size ➡ ●

- 3 ● Specify image area



- If crop frame does not appear, omit 3.

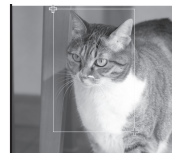
- 4 ●
- Editing is complete.

Zooming In/Out

After 3, 4 ➡ 4 ➡ 4

Cropping Images

- 1 In Resize window, **Cut** ➡ ●
- 2 ● Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop ➡ ●



- 3 ● Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop ➡ ●

- 4 ●
- Editing is complete.

Specifying Image Area

After 3, 4 ➡ 4

Zooming In/Out

After 3, 4 ➡ 4 ➡ 4

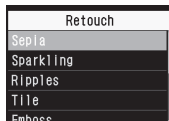
Advanced

- Using additional editing options (P.7-22)

Applying Visual Effects

Render in sepia tones or add blur, etc.

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Retouch* ➔ ●



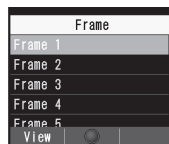
- 2 Select effect ➔ ●



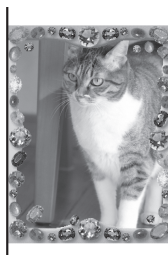
- 3 ●
 - Editing is complete.

Adding Frames

- 1 In Picture Editor menu, *Frame* ➔ ●



- 2 Select frame ➔ ●



- 3 ●
 - Editing is complete.



Face Arrange

Make faces smiley, sad, etc.

1 In Picture Editor menu, *Face Arrange* ➔ ●



Face Arrange Menu

2 Select type ➔ ●

3 ●

- Editing is complete.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1 In Face Arrange menu, ●

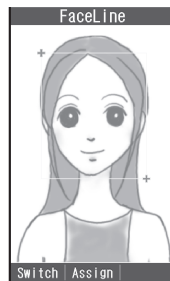


- A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

2 ● Move + to top left of face

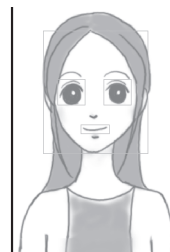


3 ● Move + to bottom right of face



4 ●

- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.



5 ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ Save here ➔ ●

- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.



Composite

Composite Options

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Split Picture	Combine up to four images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

- 1 ● ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ●
- 2 **Pictures** ➔ ● ➔ **Select image** ➔ ●
- 3 ● ➔ **Edit** ➔ ●
- 4 **Composite** ➔ ●

5 Merge Panorama ➔ ●



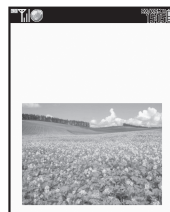
- File selected in 2 is set as left image.

6 <Empty> ➔ ● ➔ **Select image** ➔ ●

7 EFFECT ➔ ● ➔ **Select effect** ➔ ●

- Editing is complete.

8 When finished, ●



- Merged image appears.

9 ●

10 Enter name ➔ ● ➔ **Save here** ➔ ●

Changing Images

After 7, select image ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔

Select image ➔ ●

Switching Image Positions

After 8, ●

Advanced

- Combining reduced images (P.7-23)



Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

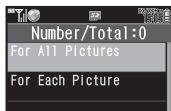
7

Camera & Imaging

1 → **Settings** → →

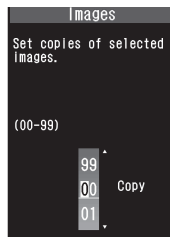
2 **Memory Card** → → **DPOF** →

3 **Number of Copies** →



4 **For Each Picture** → →

5 **Select image** →



6 **Enter a number of copies to print** →

• For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.

7

Applying a Number to All Images

In 4, **For All Pictures** → → Enter a number of copies to print →

Canceling Specified Number

In 6, enter 00 → →

Viewing Current Print Settings

In 3, **Check Settings** →

Using Printers

Connect handset to a Bluetooth®-compatible printer and print images in Pictures folder.

- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.
- Some images may not be sent depending on file type and size.

1 → **Data Folder** → → **Pictures** →

2 **Select image** → → **Print** →

3 **Via Bluetooth** → → **Select printer** →

4 **Yes** →

- To cancel, press .

When Authorization Code is Required

Enter Authorization Code →



Advanced

Changing print settings (P.7-23)

Photo Camera & Video Camera

General

Accessing files from Viewfinder	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Data Folder ➔ ➔ Select file ➔
Opening Help	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Help ➔ • Press to toggle Help window for indicator descriptions and key assignments.
Changing function assigned to Camera Key ()	➔ Camera ➔ ➔ Set Camera Key ➔ ➔ Select function ➔

Capturing

Adjusting brightness	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Exposure ➔ ➔ Adjust level
Adjusting focus quickly for close-up shots	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Focus Setting ➔ ➔ Macro ➔
Adjusting focus manually	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Focus Setting ➔ ➔ Manual Focus ➔ ➔ Adjust focus ➔ • To readjust focus, press .
Locking focus	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, • Frame subject in center of Display first. • To start over, press again.
Changing image quality	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Picture Quality or Video Quality ➔ ➔ Select quality ➔

Saving

Selecting automatic save option	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Save Setting ➔ ➔ Auto Save ➔ ➔ See below
	For Still Images Select option ➔ • When Off , press after image capture to save.
Changing save location	Saving Video Automatically On ➔
	In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ➔ Save Setting ➔ ➔ Save Pictures to or Save Videos to ➔ ➔ Select option ➔



Photo Camera

■ General

Changing shutter click sound	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Shutter Setting ➤ ➤ Shutter Sound ➤ ➤ Select pattern ➤ • Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are fixed.
Switching indicator view	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Display Setting ➤ ➤ Select option ➤
Changing send option assigned to	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Settings ➤ ➤ Set Send Key ➤ ➤ Short press or Long press ➤ ➤ Select option ➤ • Change send option separately for each key press method.
Disabling quick transition to Viewfinder after saving images	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Save Setting ➤ ➤ Background Save ➤ ➤ Off ➤

■ Capturing

Changing Mobile Light mode	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Mobile Light ➤ ➤ Select mode ➤ • Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
Adjusting camera's light sensitivity	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Settings ➤ ➤ ISO Sensitivity ➤ ➤ Select level ➤ • ISO Sensitivity is Auto (~800) by default. However, 800 or higher sensitivity may be applied depending on environment.
Changing image size	In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ Picture Size ➤ ➤ Select size ➤

Adjusting smile detection level

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Shutter Setting** ➤ ➤ **Egao level** ➤ ➤ **Select level** ➤
 • Lower the level when detection is slow.

Adjusting color balance according to lighting conditions

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Settings** ➤ ➤ **White Balance** ➤ ➤ **Select mode** ➤

Disabling shake reduction

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Settings** ➤ ➤ **Shake Reducing** ➤ ➤ **Off** ➤

■ Focus

Setting Center Auto Focus

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Focus Setting** ➤ ➤ **Center Auto Focus** ➤

Specifying focus point manually

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Focus Setting** ➤ ➤ **Spot Auto Focus** ➤
 • A frame appears on Display; use to move frame over target focus point.

Canceling Continuous AF

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Focus Setting** ➤ ➤ **Continuous AF** ➤ ➤ **Off** ➤

Canceling Chase Focus

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Focus Setting** ➤ ➤ **Chase Focus** ➤ ➤ **Off** ➤

Changing Focus Mark

In Photo Viewfinder, ➤ **Focus Setting** ➤ ➤ **Focus Mark** ➤ ➤ **Select pattern** ➤



■ Correction & Preview

Correcting portrait auto focus images	<p>Start Here After image capture, ➔ <i>Correlate to Face</i> ➔ ➔ See below</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when Auto Save is <i>Off</i>.
	<p>Adjusting Face/Background Brightness</p> <p><i>Against sun</i> ➔ ➔ </p>
	<p>Blurring Out-of-Focus Portions</p> <p><i>Portrait</i> ➔ ➔ </p>
Brightening backlit subjects (Dynamic Range Adjustment)	<p>After image capture, </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> May be unavailable or require access via Options menu depending on Auto Save setting.
Seeking guidance for better shots	<p>After image capture, (Long)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions. Available when Auto Save is <i>Off</i>.

■ Panorama Picture

Changing Panorama settings	<p>Start Here In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ <i>Modes</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Panorama/Scanner</i> ➔ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Hiding Guides</p> <p><i>Assisting Lines</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ </p>
	<p>Locking Display Brightness during Image Capture</p> <p><i>AE-Lock</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Enable</i> ➔ </p>
Changing Panorama image preview method	<p>In Panorama preview, ➔ <i>Manual Scroll</i> or <i>Full Image</i> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when Auto Save is <i>Off</i>.

■ Bluetooth® Watches

Releasing shutter remotely with a Bluetooth® watch	<p>In Photo Viewfinder, press the corresponding button on Bluetooth® watch</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch and set Set Remote Shutter to <i>On</i> beforehand. For details, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.
Disabling remote shutter control via Bluetooth® watches	<p>In Photo Viewfinder, ➔ <i>Shutter Setting</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Set Remote Shutter</i> ➔ ➔ <i>Off</i> ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Available when a Bluetooth® watch is registered.



Video Camera

Activating Mobile Light	In Video Viewfinder, Mobile Light On or Automatic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
Capturing images while recording video (still image capture)	While recording , <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Captured images are saved when saving recorded clip; open them via Review or Data Folder.
Changing recording time/size	In Video Viewfinder, Record Time/Size
Enlarging Viewfinder size	In Video Viewfinder, Display Size
Recording video without sound	In Video Viewfinder, Settings
Changing video encoding	In Video Viewfinder, Save Setting
Disabling shake reduction	In Video Viewfinder, Shake Reducing

Editing Images

Picture Editor

Data Folder

Changing Text/Outline Color

Paste

Adding Text

Paste **Free Text**

Adding Dates

Paste **Date**

Adding Stamps

Stamp

Correcting Image Parameters

Correction

Rotating Images

Rotate

Converting File Format

File Format **File Format**

- Changing file format may affect file size/image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press .

Changing File Size

File Format **File Size**

- Changing file size may affect image quality.
- To return to Picture Editor menu, press .

Using additional editing options



Composite

Combining reduced images	Start Here → Data Folder → Pictures → Select file → Edit → Composite → See below
	Creating Split Picture <i>SplitPicture 480x854 or SplitPicture 240x320</i> → <Empty> → Select file → When finished, Enter name → Save here → Repeat from selecting <Empty> as needed.
	Previewing Split Picture While creating Split Picture, View Composite
	Changing Images While creating Split Picture, select image → Select another
	Deleting Images While creating Split Picture, select image → Remove → Yes

DPOF

Changing print settings	Start Here → Settings → Connectivity → Memory Card → DPOF → See below
	Adding Dates to Prints Settings → Add Date → On
	Creating an Index Print Settings → Index Print → On
	Resetting Reset Settings → Yes





Mobile Camera

? Mobile camera won't activate/ shuts down automatically

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
- Leaving handset at high temperature may cause camera area to heat up, disabling mobile camera activation; wait a while and retry.
- Prolonged camera use may cause camera area to heat up, resulting in automatic shutdown; wait a while and retry.

? Cannot use Background Save or Auto Save

- Background Save/Auto Save is not available when Save Pictures to is set to **Ask Each Time**.



Display went dark during image capture

- 935SH camera has built-in mechanical shutter and ND filter. Strong shocks to handset during image capture may close mechanical shutter for camera protection, resulting in blank Viewfinder. Reactivate mobile camera to reopen the shutter.



Image is dark or distorted

- Avoid capturing strong light sources (sun, lamps, etc.) in the background.



Captured image appears all white

- When Long Exposure is active (⏱, etc. appears), images captured in daylight or good light appear all white.

Editing Images



Cannot save/send edited images

- Edited images may be too large to save or send via mail.

DPOF



Cannot specify print settings properly

- If Memory Card image files have been deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, reset print settings and start over with settings.

Media Player	8-2
Media Basics	8-2
Music	8-4
Playing Music.....	8-4
Video	8-5
Playing Video.....	8-5

Playlists	8-6
Using Playlists	8-6
S! Appli	8-7
Using S! Applications	8-7
Additional Functions	8-8
Troubleshooting.....	8-13

8

Media Player & S! Applications



Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 935SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player or transfer files from PCs or AQUOS Blu-ray Disc recorders (hereafter "Blu-ray Disc recorders").
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Music File Support

My Music

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Transferred Files

SD AUDIO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-AudioFiles

WMA

(Memory Card)

Transferred WMA Files

Video File Support

My Videos

(Handset/Memory Card)

Downloads/Recorded Files

Recorder Contents/ SD VIDEO

(Memory Card)

Transferred SD-Video Files

Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. Playback stops if battery runs low during playback.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming/progressive download). Packet transmission fees apply even while playback is paused.

Compatibility

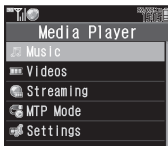
- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.



Downloading Media Files

Download media files from the Internet. Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

1 ➔ **Media Player** ➔



Media Player Menu

2 **Music or Videos** ➔

3 **Download Music or Download Videos** ➔

- Follow the links to download media.

Download via Music Search (Japanese)

In **Music Search** ➔

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Music Files from PCs

- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank Mobile does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

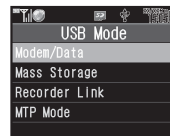
Saving AAC Files

Convert PC music files to 935SH-compatible format (P.15-21), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.15-24) via Mass Storage. Install USB Cable driver beforehand.

Saving WMA Files

Follow these steps to save WMA files via compatible software:
(Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.)

1 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**



2 **MTP Mode** ➔

- Copy music from PC. Refer to the software's help menu for operational instructions.

3 ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Connection ends**

- Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
 - ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **USB Mode** ➔ ➔ **From 2**
 - Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.



Playing Music

1 → **Media Player** → → **Music** →

2 **My Music** → → **Select**
tab (folder)



Music Playlists Window

3 **All Music** →

4 **Select file** →



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible Chaku-Uta Full® files. (WMA album art is not supported.)

Using Other Functions while Playing Music

After , or

- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:

→ **Yes** →

Playing SD AUDIO or WMA Files

In , **SD AUDIO** or **WMA** → →

From

Searching Music Files

After , → **Search** → → Enter
search text →

Lyric Display-Compatible Files

- Press to display lyrics.

Music Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	7	Volume
3	Track number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Music Playback Operations

Replay	(Long Press: rewind)
Skip Forward	(Long Press: fast forward)
Volume Down	(Long Press: mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	
Pause	
Stop	While paused,
Switch Sound Output	(Long)
Open Help	

*Release for playback.

Advanced

- Resuming from stopped point
- Specifying start point
- Playing repeatedly or randomly
- Changing Sound Effects (And more on **P.8-8**)



Playing Video

1 ➔ **Media Player** ➔ ➔ **Videos** ➔

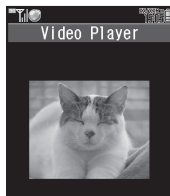
2 **My Videos** ➔ ➔ **Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➔



Video Playlists Window

3 **All Videos** ➔

4 **Select file** ➔



Video Playback Window

5 ➔ **Playback stops**

Playing Video Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders

In 2, **Recorder Contents** ➔ ➔ 4

Playing SD VIDEO Files

In 2, **SD VIDEO** ➔ ➔ 4

Searching Video Files

After 3, ➔ **Search** ➔ ➔ Enter search text ➔

At Alarm Time

- Playback stops.

Video Recorded on Other Devices

- Video image may appear rotated.

Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down, sound output or help, see P.8-4 "Music Playback Operations."

Replay	(Long Press: rewind*)
Skip Forward	(Long Press while paused: advance frame, Long Press: fast forward*)
Toggle Display Size	

*Release for playback.

Video Playback Window Description



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Advanced

● Resuming from stopped point ● Specifying start point ● Accessing linked information ● Switching audio output to wireless device ● Playing repeatedly or randomly ● Changing Sound Effects ● Changing playback size ● Setting Backlight status ● Hiding linked information (P.8-8)



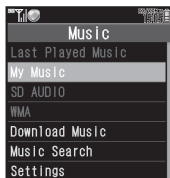
Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre. Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

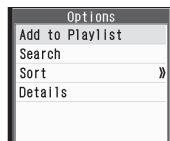
Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to **プレイリスト1**:

- 1 ➔ **Media Player** ➔ ➔ **Music** ➔



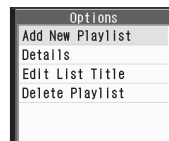
- 2 **My Music** ➔
- 3 **All Music** ➔ ➔ **Select file** ➔



- 4 **Add to Playlist** ➔ ➔ **プレイリスト1** ➔

Renaming Playlists

- 1 In Playlists window, select **Playlist** ➔



- 2 **Edit List Title** ➔ ➔ **Enter name** ➔



Advanced

- Organizing Playlists ● Sorting files ● Opening properties ● Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files ● Deleting All WMA files ● Downloading Contents Keys (P.8-9)
- Organizing Playlists ● Sorting files ● Downloading Contents Keys ● Opening properties ● Deleting SD VIDEO files ● Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders (And more on P.8-10)



Using S! Applications

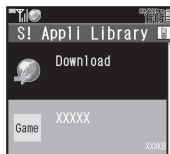
Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 935SH-compatible S! Applications, including games. Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

Remote Control

- Use **ファミリタタタ for AQUOS**

S! Application (Japanese) to control a TV, VCR, etc. via infrared.

- 1 ➔ **S! Appli** ➔
- 2 **S! Appli Library** ➔



S! Appli Library

- 3 **Select application** ➔

Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls

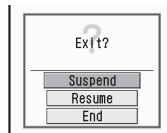
- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Opening S! Appli Notification History

In , **Notification History** ➔

Exiting S! Applications

- 1



- 2 **End** ➔

Pausing S! Applications

In , **Suspend** ➔

Resuming S! Applications

➔ **Resume** ➔

- Select **Cancel** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused. (Additional function activation may be disabled depending on the S! Application.)
- Select **End** to end the S! Application.

Advanced

- Downloading S! Applications ● Adjusting S! Application sound volume ● Canceling surround effect ● Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions ● Setting S! Application to activate in Standby ● Setting Permissions ● Opening properties (P.8-11)
- Moving S! Applications to Memory Card ● Changing S! Application settings ● Deleting S! Applications ● Restoring default S! Application settings
- Restoring default S! Appli Library ● Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 935SH ● Opening Java™ license information (P.8-12)



Media Playback

Music & Video

Resuming from stopped point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Music or Videos</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Last Played Music or Last Played Video</i> ➔ ●
Specifying start point	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Time Search</i> ➔ ● ➔ Enter time ➔ ●
Accessing linked information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Access Web Link</i> ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
Switching audio output to wireless device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● ➔ <i>Media Player</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sound Output</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Bluetooth Device</i> ➔ ●

Music

Playing repeatedly or randomly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <small>[Start Here]</small> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Playback Mode</i> ➔ ● ➔ See below
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Repeat One File</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Repeat</i> ➔ ●
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Repeat All Files</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Repeat All</i> ➔ ●
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Play Randomly</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Random</i> ➔ ●
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Repeat Randomly</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Random Repeat</i> ➔ ●
Changing Sound Effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Sound Effects</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ●

Video

Some functions may be unavailable depending on file.

Playing repeatedly or randomly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <small>[Start Here]</small> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Playback Mode</i> ➔ ● ➔ See below
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Repeat One File</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Repeat</i> ➔ ●
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Repeat All Files</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Repeat All</i> ➔ ●
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Play Randomly</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Random</i> ➔ ●
Changing Sound Effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Sound Effects</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ●
Changing playback size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Display Size</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select size ➔ ●
Setting Backlight status	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Backlight</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● • Selecting <i>Normal Settings</i> applies Display Backlight settings.
Hiding linked information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During playback, ⏮ ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Web Link Setting</i> ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●



Managing Music Files

Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → See below</p> <p>Adding New Playlists Add New Playlist → Enter name →</p> <p>Deleting Playlists Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes →</p> <p>Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes →</p> <p>Changing File Order Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Move file →</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Music → My Music → Select tab (folder) → All Music → Sort → Select option →</p>
	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Music → See below</p> <p>SD AUDIO Files SD AUDIO → All Music → Select file → Details →</p> <p>Other Files My Music → Select tab (folder) → Select Playlist → Select file → Details →</p>
Sorting files	
Opening properties	

Deleting/editing SD AUDIO files

Start Here → **Media Player** → **Music** → **SD AUDIO** → **See below**

Deleting Single Files

All Music → **Select file** → **Delete Track** → **Yes** →

- Source files will be deleted.

Deleting All Entries

All Music → **Del. All Tracks** → **Yes** → **Yes** →

- Source files will be deleted.

Editing Title/Artist

All Music → **Select file** → **Edit** → **Select item** → **Enter title or name** →

Deleting All WMA files

→ **Media Player** → **Settings** → **Delete All WMA** → **Enter Handset Code** → **Yes** →

- Source files will be deleted.

Downloading Contents Keys

→ **Media Player** → **Music** → **My Music** → **Select tab (folder)** → **Select Playlist** → **Select file (with ⌘)** → **Yes** →

- Follow onscreen instructions.



Managing Video Files

Organizing Playlists	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → See below</p> <p>Adding New Playlists Add New Playlist → Enter name</p> <p>Deleting Playlists Select Playlist → Delete Playlist → Yes</p> <p>Deleting Playlist Files Select Playlist → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p>Changing File Order Select Playlist → Select file → Change Order → Move file</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → All Videos → Sort → Select option</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Videos → My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → All Videos → Select file (with %)</p> <p>• Follow onscreen instructions.</p>
Sorting files	
Downloading Contents Keys	

Opening properties	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Videos → See below</p> <p>SD VIDEO Files SD VIDEO → Select file → Details</p> <p>Files Transferred from Blu-ray Disc Recorders Recorder Contents → Select file → Details</p> <p>Other Files My Videos → Phone Memory or Memory Card → Select Playlist → Select file → Details</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Videos → SD VIDEO → Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p>• Source files will be deleted.</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Videos → Recorder Contents → Select file → Rename → Enter name</p>
	<p>→ Media Player → Videos → Recorder Contents → Memory Remaining</p>
Deleting SD VIDEO files	
Renaming files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	
Checking Memory Card memory status	
Deleting files transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders	<p>Start Here → Media Player → Videos → Recorder Contents → See below</p> <p>Single Files Select file → Delete → Yes</p> <p>All Files Delete All → Enter Handset Code → Yes</p>



S! Applications

Downloading S! Applications	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Download ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions.
Adjusting S! Application sound volume	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Application Volume ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●</p>
Canceling surround effect	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Surround ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p>
Setting handset responses to incoming transmissions	<p>Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Calls & Alarms ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Showing Calls Select item ➔ ● ➔ Show Call Notice ➔ ●</p> <p>Pausing S! Application for Incoming Mail Incoming Message ➔ ● ➔ Message Priority ➔ ●</p> <p>Showing Alarm Notice Alarm ➔ ● ➔ Alarm Notice ➔ ●</p> <p>Showing Incoming S! Appli Request Notice Notification ➔ ● ➔ Start Notice ➔ ●</p>

Setting S! Application to activate in Standby

Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ See below

Activating Screensaver

Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●

Setting Screensaver

S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ● ➔ As Screensaver ➔ ●

- As Screensaver appears for compatible S! Applications.
- Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.

Changing Screensaver Activation Time

Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Activation Time ➔ ● ➔ Enter time ➔ ●

Disabling Automatic Screensaver Restart

Settings ➔ ● ➔ Screensaver ➔ ● ➔ Stop Auto Start ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●

Setting Permissions

Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ● ➔ Permission ➔ ● ➔ See below

Customizing Permissions for S! Appli Operations
Select item ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●

Resetting Permission Settings

Reset Settings ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●

Opening properties

● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ Select application ➔ ● ➔ Details ➔ ●



Moving S! Applications to Memory Card	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ (Y) ➔ Select application ➔ ● (□/✓) ➔ Complete selection ➔ (C) ➔ Move to Card ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose Yes or No and press ●. Repeat application selection step as needed before pressing (C). Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.
Changing S! Application settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Activating Notification Setting Notification Setting ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●</p> <p>Setting Backlight Status Backlight ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight settings. <p>Disabling Backlight Flashing Backlight ➔ ● ➔ Blink ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p> <p>Disabling Vibration Vibration ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p>
Deleting S! Applications	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ S! Appli Library ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Select application ➔ (C) ➔ Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset Code may be required. Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Restoring default S! Application settings	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Set to Default ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>
Restoring default S! Appli Library	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Memory All Clear ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications; Near Chat access restriction will be canceled.
Synchronizing Memory Card S! Applications with 935SH	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Synchronization ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>
Opening Java™ license information	<p>● ➔ S! Appli ➔ ● ➔ Information ➔ ●</p>



Music

? How do I delete files in All Music?

- Delete All Music files in My Music via Data Folder (Music or Ring Songs/Tones).

? WMA files do not appear (WMA files are not transferable)

- Did you use 935SH to transfer the files? Copy protected files can only be played on the handset with which the files were transferred.
- Copy protection information may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and re-transfer the files.
- Files transferred via Mass Storage appear when moved to corresponding Memory Card folder. (Transfer copy protected files via MTP Mode.)
- WMA files may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

? Cannot play WMA files

- Playback rights may have expired (license not found message appears); re-transfer the files. If files still cannot be played, they may be corrupted; perform **Delete All WMA** and retry.

Video

? How do I delete files in All Videos?

- Delete All Videos files via Data Folder (Videos).

? Cannot play video files

- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.

S! Applications

? Cannot move S! Applications to Memory Card

- Memory Card memory may be low or the S! Application may already be saved.

? S! Applications do not pause for incoming transmissions despite **Calls & Alarms** settings

- Regardless of setting, a message appears for Screensaver S! Applications.



Calendar & Tasks	9-2
Calendar	9-2
Tasks	9-5
Alarms	9-7
Using Alarms	9-7
Wakeup TV	9-9
Using Wakeup TV	9-9
Relaxation Time	9-11
Playing Animation with Music & Illumination	9-11
Calculator	9-12
Using Calculator	9-12
Expenses Memo	9-13
Adding Expenses	9-13
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-14
Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)	9-14
Locking IC Card	9-15
Simulated Call	9-18
Faking Incoming Calls	9-18
Stopwatch	9-19
Using Stopwatch	9-19
Countdown Timer	9-20
Using Countdown Timer	9-20
World Clock	9-21
Opening World Clock	9-21

Hour Minder	9-22
Using Hour Minder	9-22
Pedometer	9-23
Using Pedometer	9-23
Document Viewer	9-25
Opening PC Documents	9-25
Notepad	9-26
Saving Text	9-26
ASCII Art	9-27
Using ASCII Art	9-27
Voice Recorder	9-28
Recording/Playing Voice	9-28
Scan Barcode	9-29
Scanning Barcodes	9-29
Create QR Code	9-30
Creating QR Codes	9-30
Scan Card	9-31
Scanning Business Cards	9-31
Scan Text	9-32
Scanning Text	9-32
Kanji Grabber	9-33
Using Kanji Grabber	9-33
Additional Functions	9-34
Troubleshooting	9-46

9

Handy Extras

Calendar

Opening Calendar

- 1



Calendar Window

Toggling View

Press to toggle Calendar window.



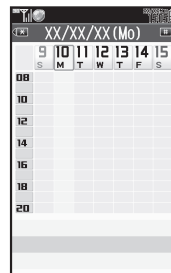
Month View



3Month View



6Month View



Week View

Key Assignments

All Views

Open Previous Page	
Open Next Page	
Open Help	

Month/3Month View

Select Date	
Go to Current Date	

6Month View

Go to Current Month	
Select Month	

Week View

Select Date	
Select Time Block	

Advanced

- Changing default view Jumping to specified date Changing date color Selecting task view option Adding stamps (Month/3Month View) Hiding schedules Saving additional holidays Removing/restoring holidays (P.9-34)

Saving Schedules

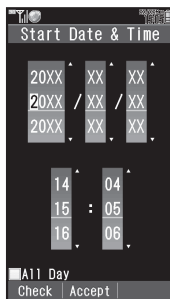
Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details: (Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1 In Calendar window, select date** ➔



- 2 <Add New Entry>** ➔

- 3 Enter subject** ➔



- 4 Enter start date/time** ➔



- 5 End:** ➔ ➔ ➔ Enter end date/time ➔

- 6 Alarm:** ➔

- 7 Alarm Time:** ➔ ➔ ➔ Select time ➔ ➔ ➔

- 8 Description:** ➔ ➔ ➔ Enter schedule details ➔ ➔

- 9** ➔ ➔ ➔ Saved

All-Day Schedule

In 4, ➔ ➔ ➔ From 8

Custom Alarm Time

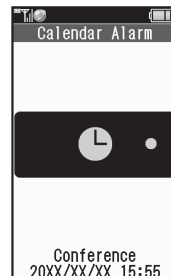
In 7, Alarm Time: ➔ ➔ ➔ Other ➔ ➔ ➔

➔ ➔ ➔ Enter date/time ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔

From 8

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press ➔, ➔ or ➔.

Stopping Alarm to Open Schedule

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than ➔, ➔ or ➔.

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

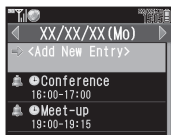
- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Advanced

- ➔ ● Setting Category/Location ● Creating Categories ● Saving repetitive schedules ● Editing entries ● Changing Alarm tone/video & duration ● Changing Alarm volume ● Selecting Vibration option (And more on P.9-35 - 9-36)

Opening Schedules/Tasks

- 1** In Calendar window, select date ➡



Schedule List

- 2** Select schedule or task ➡

- 3** ➡ Standby returns

Opening Task List

In **2**, select task ➡ ➡ Go to Tasks ➡

Accessing Secret Entries

[Calendar Window] ➡ Unlock Temporarily ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡

Opening Related Message

Open schedule-related messages saved from Messaging message list.

- 1** In schedule list, select schedule ➡

- 2** ➡ **Related Mail** ➡
- Related message opens.
 - To return to schedule window, press .

Deleting Message from Schedule

After **1**, ➡ **Related Mail:** ➡ ➡ Yes ➡ ➡

Deleting Schedules

■ One Entry

- 1** In schedule list, select schedule ➡

- 2** **Delete** ➡ ➡ **This Appointment** ➡ ➡ Yes ➡

■ All Entries of the Day

- 1** In Calendar window, select date ➡

- 2** **Delete** ➡ ➡ **All This Day** ➡ ➡ Yes ➡

Advanced

1

- Searching entries ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all entries ● Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View) ● Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View) ● Deleting entries in six months (6Month View) (P.9-36)

Saving Tasks

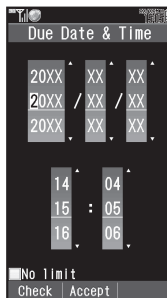
Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
(Enter Subject or Description to save entry.)

- 1  ➔ **Tools** ➔  ➔ In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, **Tasks** ➔ 



- 2 <Add New Entry> ➡ ●

-  Enter subject ➡ 



- 4 Enter due date/time ➡** 



- 5 Alarm:** ➡ 



- Alarm Time:** ➡  ➡ **Select**
time ➡  ➡ 

- 7** **Description:** ➡  ➡ Enter task details ➡ 

-   ➡ **Saved**

Task with No Due Date/Time

In 4,  ➡  ➡ From 7

Custom Alarm Time

In 6, Alarm Time: ➡  ➡ Other ➡

● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ Ⓜ ➡

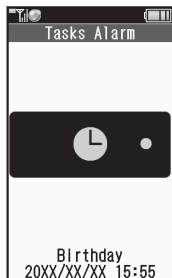
From 7

Advanced

- 
 Hiding tasks
  Editing tasks
  Setting priority
  Changing Alarm tone/video & duration
  Changing Alarm volume
  Selecting Vibration option
  Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (**P.9-36 - 9-37**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Alarm to Return to Standby

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press or .

Stopping Alarm to Open Task

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key other than , or .

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

- ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Tasks** ➔



Task List

- Use to open completed or uncompleted task list.

- Select task ➔



- ➔ **Standby returns**

Accessing Secret Entries

After , ➔ **Unlock Temporarily** ➔

➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Marking Tasks as Completed

After , select task ➔

Deleting Tasks

One Entry

- In task list, select task ➔

- Delete** ➔

- This Task** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

All Completed Tasks

- In task list,

- Delete** ➔

- All Comp. Tasks** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

- Searching tasks ● Sorting tasks by priority ● Checking memory status ● Deleting all tasks (P.9-37)

Using Alarms

Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week: (Set Snooze--Alarm repeats at set interval--Alarm Volume and Duration.)

- 1**



Alarm List

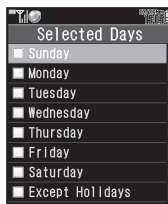
- 2** Enter hour (24-hour format) Enter minutes



- 3** Repeat:



- 4** Selected Days



- 5** Select day Complete selection

- 6** Snooze:

- 7** Select interval
 • For custom intervals, select *Other*.

- 8** Alarm Volume:

- 9** Adjust level

- 10** Duration:

- 11** Select time

• For custom Duration, select *Other*.

- 12** Saved

• For more settings, repeat **2** - **12**.

- 13** Alarm setting ends

Activating Alarm Once or Daily

In **4**, *Once or Every Day (All)*

From **6**

Selecting/Canceling All Days

In **5**, Check All or Uncheck All

Excluding Holidays

In **5**, select day Complete selection

Except

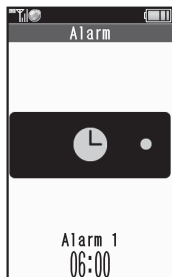
Holidays From **6**

Advanced

- Editing entries Saving entry name Changing Alarm tone/video Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (P.9-38)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Alarm

- Press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze

While Snoozing, ☐ ➔ Yes ➔ ☐

- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔

2 Switch Off ➔ ☐

- Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In , Switch On ➔ ☐

Deleting Alarm

One Entry

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔

2 Reset Alarm ➔ ☐

3 Yes ➔ ☐

All Entries

1 In Alarm list, select entry ➔

2 Clear All ➔ ☐

3 Enter Handset Code ➔ ☐
➔ Yes ➔ ☐

Using Wakeup TV

Setting Wakeup TV

Follow these steps to activate TV at a specific time on a specific day of the week:

- Complete TV Area Setup beforehand.
- TV may not activate in poor signal conditions.

- 1** In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, **Wakeup TV**



Wakeup TV List

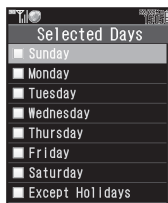
- 2** Enter hour
(24-hour format) Enter
minutes



Wakeup TV Menu

- 3** **Repeat:**

- 4** **Selected Days**



- 5** Select day
Complete selection

- 6** **Channel:**

- 7** Select channel

- 8** **Saved**

• For more settings, repeat **2** - **8**.

- 9** **Wakeup TV setting**
ends

Activating TV Once or Daily

In **4**, **Once or Every Day (All)**
 From **5**

Selecting/Canceling All Days

In **5**, **Check All or Uncheck All**

Excluding Holidays

In **5**, select day
Complete selection **Except**
Holidays From **5**

Canceling Alarm

• Alarm activates at Wakeup TV time. To
cancel Alarm, follow these steps:
[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm On/Off:**
 Off From **5**

Adjusting Alarm Volume

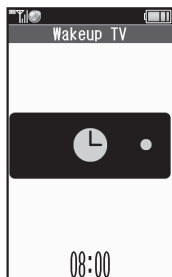
[Wakeup TV Menu] **Alarm Volume:**
 Adjust level From **5**

Advanced

- Editing entries Changing Alarm tone/video Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode (**P.9-38**)

At Wakeup TV Time

TV activates after Alarm.



Stopping Alarm Instantly

- While Alarm sounds/vibrates, press a key.
- When Another Function is Active**
- TV may not activate depending on the function.

After TV is On for a Period of Time

- Confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press ☐ to exit TV.

Canceling Wakeup TV

- 1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔ ☐
- 2** **Wakeup TV Off** ➔ ☐
 - Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry

In **2**, **Wakeup TV On** ➔ ☐

Deleting Wakeup TV

■ One Entry

- 1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔ ☐
- 2** **Reset Alarm** ➔ ☐
- 3** **Yes** ➔ ☐

■ All Entries

- 1** In Wakeup TV list, select entry ➔ ☐
- 2** **Clear All** ➔ ☐
- 3** **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ☐
 - ➔ **Yes** ➔ ☐

Playing Animation with Music & Illumination

Play preset animations or downloaded Flash® files with music and illumination. Set playback time, volume and illumination pattern as needed.

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Relaxation Time** ➔

2 **Select type** ➔

- Animation appears.
- For **Flash®**, select a file and press .
 - Key LEDs do not illuminate for soundless Flash® files.

Setting Relaxation Time

Follow these steps to set playback time, volume and Key Illumination pattern:

1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Relaxation Time** ➔

2 **Settings** ➔



3 **Playback Time** ➔

4 **Select time** ➔

- For custom playback time, select **Other**.

5 **Volume** ➔

6 **Adjust level** ➔

7 **Set Key Illumi** ➔



8 **Key Pattern** ➔

9 **Select pattern** ➔ ➔

10 ➔ **Standby returns**

Disabling Key Illumination

In , **Set Key Illumi** ➔ ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔ ➔

Using Calculator

- 1 **Calculator**



Calculator Window

- 2 **Use Keypad to enter digits**
 Calculate
- 3 **Calculator ends**

Key Assignments

+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
x (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Sum)	
C-CE (Clear)	
CM (Clear Memory)	
RM (Recall Memory)	
M+ (Add to Memory)	
. (Decimal)	
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	
% (Percentage)	

Memory Calculation

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.
- Numbers saved in Memory remain until handset power is turned off.

Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

Enter 800,000 30

■ 240,000 appears.

Advanced

- Copying calculation results
- Changing exchange rate for currency conversion
- Converting currencies (P.9-38)

Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

- 1 Enter amount ➔



- 2



- 3 Select Category ➔ ➔ Saved

Saving under Custom Category

In , Other ➔ ➔ Enter name ➔

Checking Entries

- 1 ➔ Tools ➔ ➔ In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, *Expenses*
Memo ➔



- 2 Totals ➔



Expenses Memo List

- 3 ➔ Standby returns

Saving Entries to Notepad

[Expenses Memo List] ➔ Save to
Notepad ➔

- All expense details are saved as a single entry.

Deleting Entries

■ One Entry

- 1 In Expenses Memo list, select entry ➔

- 2 Delete Item ➔

- 3 Yes ➔

■ All Entries

- 1 In Expenses Memo list,

- 2 Delete All ➔

- 3 Enter Handset Code ➔
➔ Yes ➔

Advanced

- Changing Category of saved entry Changing amount Renaming Categories (P.9-39)

Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 935SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

- ➡ **Tools** ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, **Osaifu-Keitai** ➡ ● ➡ **Lifestyle-Appli** ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ●

Lifestyle-Appli Precautions

- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

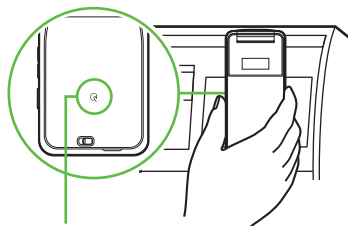
Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:

Example: Making an electronic payment

- Lifestyle-Appli activation is not necessary.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off (if battery is adequately charged).
- Calls/Internet transmissions do not affect transactions.

- 1 Place  logo over reader/writer ➡ Confirm scan results



Place this part
over reader/writer

- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor

- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Advanced

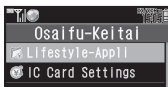
-  Enabling to view e-money balances ● Moving applications up/down Balance Info list ● Removing applications from Balance Info list (P.9-39)

Locking IC Card

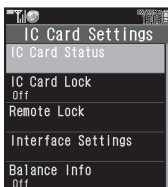
IC Card Lock

Restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai** ➔



- 2 **IC Card Settings** ➔



IC Card Settings Menu

- 3 **IC Card Lock** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

- 4 **Enter Handset Code** ➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

Canceling IC Card Lock

- In , **IC Card Lock** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Advanced

- Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands ● Opening IC Card properties ● Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient ● Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock ● Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (**P.9-39**)

Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

Mail Remote Lock	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

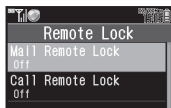
Mail Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

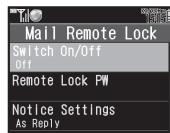
1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* ➔ ●

2 **IC Card Settings** ➔ ●

3 **Remote Lock** ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ●



4 **Mail Remote Lock** ➔ ●



Mail Remote Lock Menu

5 **Remote Lock PW** ➔ ●

6 **Enter password** ➔ ●

7 **Switch On/Off** ➔ ●

8 **On** ➔ ● ➔ ●

Canceling Mail Remote Lock

In 5, **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ● ➔ ●

■ **Activating Remote Lock via Mail**
If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

1 **Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject**

- After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

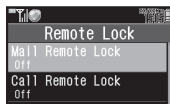
Call Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ In PIM/
Lifestyle menu, **Osaifu-Keitai**
➔

- 2 **IC Card Settings** ➔

- 3 **Remote Lock** ➔ ➔ Enter
Handset Code ➔

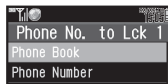


- 4 **Call Remote Lock** ➔



Call Remote Lock Menu

- 5 **Phone No. to Lck 1 or
Phone No. to Lck 2** ➔



- 6 **Phone Book** ➔ ➔ Select
entry ➔ ➔ Select phone
number ➔

- Select **Phone Number** to enter directly.

- 7 **Switch On/Off** ➔

- 8 **On** ➔ ➔

Enabling Activation via Public Phone

- In , **Set Public Phone** ➔ ➔ **On**
➔ ➔ **From**

Canceling Call Remote Lock

- In , **Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔
 ➔

■ Activating Remote Lock via Phone

If handset cannot receive calls IC Card
Lock is not set.

- 1 **Using one of the specified
phones, call handset**

- Send Caller ID.

- 2 **Handset receives call ➔
End the call**

- The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

- 3 **Within three minutes, repeat
1 - 2 twice**



- After the third Missed Call, IC Card
Lock is set; a message announces
Remote Lock activation. Confirm the
message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over
from the beginning.

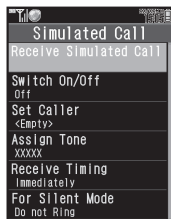
Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Save name and phone number to show as Caller ID.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see **P.9-40**.

Setting Simulated Call

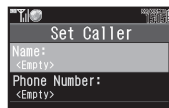
- 1 ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Simulated Call*** ➔



Simulated Call Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** ➔ ➔ **On** ➔

- 3 **Set Caller** ➔



- 4 **Name:** ➔ ➔ **Enter name** ➔

- 5 **Phone Number:** ➔ ➔ **Enter phone number** ➔ ➔

- 6 **Assign Tone** ➔ ➔ **Select tone/file** ➔

- 7 ➔ **PIM/Lifestyle menu returns**

When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Simulated Call

[Simulated Call Menu] **Switch On/Off**
➔ ➔ **Off** ➔ ➔

Setting Wait Time

[Simulated Call Menu] **Receive Timing**
➔ ➔ **Select time** ➔ ➔

Using Simulated Call

Available with handset open.

- 1 **(Long)**
 - Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
 - Ringtone stops after a period of time.

- 2 **In incoming Voice Call window, press**
 - Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)

- 3 ➔ **Simulated Call ends**

When Receive Timing is Not Immediately

- Press or during wait time to cancel Simulated Call activation.
- Simulated Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

Advanced

- Starting via Simulated Call menu • Clearing caller information • Overriding Silent volume setting (**P.9-40**)

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

- 1 ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ●
Clocks/Gauges ➔ **Stopwatch**
 ➔ ●



Stopwatch Window

- 2 ● ➔ **Stopwatch starts**
- 3 ● ➔ **Stopwatch stops**
 • Press ● to resume.
- 4 ☎ ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔
Stopwatch ends
 • Records are deleted when
 Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times

While Stopwatch is running, ⌘

Saving Records to Notepad

After ⌘, ⌘ ➔ **Save to Notepad** ➔ ●

Resetting Records

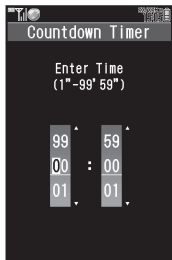
After ⌘, ⌘ ➔ **From** 2

Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Using Countdown Timer

- 1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Clocks/Gauges** ➔ **Countdown Timer** ➔



Timer Entry Window

- 2** **Enter minutes** ➔ **Enter seconds** ➔



Countdown Timer Window

- Press to change time.

- 3** ➔ **Countdown starts**
• Press to stop/resume countdown.

- 4** **Set time elapses** ➔ **Tone sounds**

- 5** ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Countdown Timer ends**

Using Timer Records

After **1**, ➔ **Select record** ➔ ➔

➔ **From** **3**

Resetting Countdown Timer

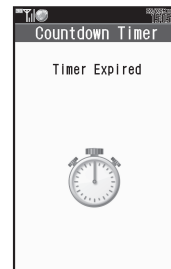
Stop countdown and

Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



Stopping Tone Instantly

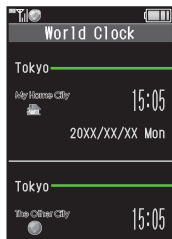
- Press or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.

Opening World Clock

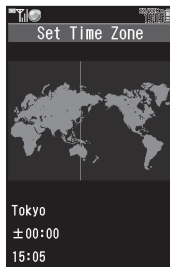
- 1  **Tools**  
Clocks/Gauges  **World**
Clock 






- Local Time Zone

- World Time Zone


- 



Set Time Zone Window


- 3  **Select area** ➡ 
- 4  ➡ **World Clock ends**

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)


[Set Time Zone Window] 

- To cancel, press **(Y/)**.

Adding Custom Time Zone

[Set Time Zone Window]  ➡ Enter

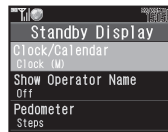
city name \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow + or - \Rightarrow  \Rightarrow

Enter time difference ➡ 

- ## Opening World Clock in Standby

- 1  ➡ **Settings** ➡  ➡ In
Phone menu, **Display** ➡ 

- 2 Standby Display** ➡ 



-  **Clock/Calendar** ➡ 

- 4 **World Clock (L), etc.** ➡

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

- 1 → **Tools** → → **Clocks/Gauges** → **Hour Minder** →



Hour Minder Menu

- 2 **Switch On/Off** → → **On** →
- 3 **Select Time** →



Advanced

- Changing Hour Minder tone/video ● Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time ● Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode ● Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (P.9-40)

- 4 **Select hour** → (/) → **Complete selection** →

- 5 → **Saved**

- 6 → **Hour Minder setting ends**

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

- In 2, **Advanced** → → **Volume:** → → **Adjust level** → → →

Changing Hour Minder Duration

- In 2, **Advanced** → → **Duration:** → → **Select time** → → →

- For custom Duration, select **Other**.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours

- In 4, → **Check All** or **Uncheck All** →

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



Stopping Tone Instantly

- Press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.

Incoming Calls

- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

- 1 In Hour Minder menu, **Switch On/Off** → → **Off** → →

Using Pedometer

Getting Started

- Count based on a pace of approximately 100 steps per minute over even terrain.
- Accuracy may be affected by course, terrain, walking style, etc.
- Avoid holding the handset; use a body worn case or a strap, or place handset inside a pocket or bag.
 - Avoid sudden/erratic movements.
- Steps are not counted in the following cases:
 - While handset is off
 - For the first few steps
 - While handset vibrates
- Handset use may affect accuracy.
- Use Pedometer only as a rough guide.

Adjusting Counter Sensitivity

- Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Pedometer → Settings → Step Sensitivity → Select option → Select **Low** when steps seem overcounted; select **High** when they seem undercounted.

Saving Body Information

Weight and pace entry required to view full Pedometer data.

- Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Pedometer



Pedometer Menu

- Settings → Body Info.

- Enter Handset Code



Body Info Menu

- Height → Enter height

- Weight → Enter weight

- Pace → Yes or No → Choose **Yes** to enter pace automatically based on height.

- Enter pace

Editing Body Information

- [Body Info Menu] Select item → Enter value → For **Pace**, automatic calculation confirmation appears (when height is entered).

Activating Pedometer

- In Pedometer menu, Switch On/Off
- On

Canceling Pedometer

- In **2**, Off

Pedometer Indicator

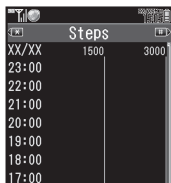
When Pedometer is active, today's step count appears in Standby.



Viewing Step Count Records

1 In Pedometer menu, **Today's Walking** ➔

2



Steps Window

- Press to toggle daily/weekly view.
- Press to open previous day/week, or to open next day/week.

3 Select time/date ➔

- Hourly/daily step counts appear.

4 ➔ Standby returns

Resetting Today's Step Count

In , ➔ **Reset Day's Data** ➔

➔ **Yes** ➔

Resetting Log

[Steps Window] ➔ **Walk Data**

Reset ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code**

➔ ➔ **Yes** ➔

- Today's data is also reset.

Setting Targets

Information window opens, etc. when target is achieved for these items:

Steps	Walking Time
Exercise	Calories
Distance	Fat burned

1 In Pedometer menu, **Settings** ➔ ➔ **Target** ➔

2 **Target Settings** ➔

3 Select item ➔ ➔ **Enter value/time** ➔

- Other target settings may consequently change.

Editing Targets

[Pedometer Menu] **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Target** ➔ ➔ **Target Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Select item** ➔ ➔ **Enter value/time** ➔

When Target is Achieved

- A tone sounds and Information window opens. (Select **Goal Achievement** and press to open Pedometer Calendar.) Follow these steps to mute achievement tone:

[Pedometer Menu] **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Target** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Goal Announce** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Off** ➔

About Exercise (Ex)

- Ex and MET indicate amount and intensity of physical activity, respectively. Ex for walking is calculated by multiplying 3 METs by walking duration (hour).

Advanced

1

- Changing Pedometer indicator
- Using Pedometer Calendar
- Checking accumulated data
- Resetting accumulated data
- Customizing achievement notice (P.9-40 - 9-41)

Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)

Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)

Microsoft® Word (.doc)

Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via the Internet.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (P.15-24).

1 ➔ *Tools* ➔ ➔ *Doc./Rec.* ➔ *Document Viewer* ➔



2 *Select file* ➔

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)
In open file, (Long) ➔ Specify portion ➔ ➔ *Zoom Out* or *Zoom In* ➔

Key Assignments

View Whole Page	
Scroll	
View Upper Left	
Toggle Full Screen View On/Off	
View Upper Right	
Zoom Out	
Continuous Zoom Out	(Long)
View Center	
Zoom In	
Continuous Zoom In	(Long)
View Lower Left	
Jump to Page	
View Lower Right	
Open Help	
Next Page	
Previous Page	
Fit Width	
Rotate 90 Degrees	

9-26

Using ASCII Art

Inserting ASCII Art

- 1 In message text entry window, ➔ *Call ASCII Art* ➔



- 2 Select entry ➔



Previewing ASCII Art

- In , select entry ➔
- Press to insert ASCII Art.

Editing Entries

- 1 ➔ *Tools* ➔ ➔ ➔ *Doc./Rec.* ➔ *ASCII Art* ➔



ASCII Art List

- 2 Select entry ➔ ➔ *Edit* ➔

Opening Entries

- In , select entry ➔ ➔ *View* ➔

Adding New Entries

- In , <Empty> ➔ ➔ *Create ASCII Art* ➔

Deleting Entries

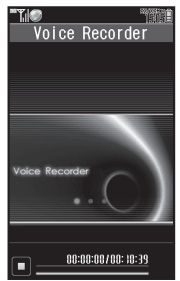
- 1 In ASCII Art list, select entry ➔ ➔ *Delete* ➔
- 2 Yes ➔

Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- Recording stops if battery runs low while recording.
- Record conversations during calls via **Record Caller Voice**.

1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder**



Recording Window

2 → **Recording starts**

3 → **Recording stops**



- For **Extended Voice**, recording is saved automatically.

4 **Save** →

Play Before Saving
 In 4, **Playback** → → **Playback starts** → → **Playback stops**
Starting Over
 In 4, → **From 2**

Playback

1 In recording window, → **Ring Songs-Tones** →



2 **Select file** →

Playing Files via Data Folder
 → **Data Folder** → → **Ring Songs-Tones** → →

Playback Operations

Adjust Volume	
Pause/Resume	
Stop	

Advanced

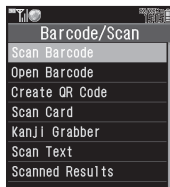
- Saving longer recordings
- Sending Voice files via S! Mail
- Switching storage media (P.9-41 - 9-42)

Scanning Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

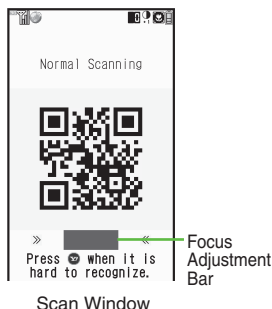
- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

- 1** ➔ **Tools** ➔ ➔ **Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan**



- 2** ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔

- 3** **Frame barcode in center of Display**



- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).
- If focus is poor, press to switch to Shutter mode.

- 4** ➔ **Scan starts**

- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
- Press to stop scan.

- 5** **Tone sounds ➔ Scan results appear**



Split Data

- After scanning, confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over

After , ➔ **Yes** ➔ ➔ **From**

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

Advanced

- Scanning during text entry • Scanning continuously • Reading saved barcode images • Saving scan results • Saving to Notepad • Saving linked info to Phone Book • Opening saved scan results • Using linked info • Using images as Wallpaper • Saving images & melodies • Copying text (And more on P.9-42 - 9-43)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

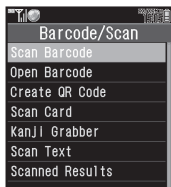
Phone Book	My Details
Text Input	Ring Songs/Tones
Pictures	Notepad

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

Procedure

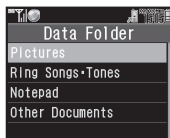
Follow these steps to create QR Codes from Data Folder files:

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan** →



- 2 **Create QR Code** →

- 3 **Data Folder** →



- 4 **Select folder** → → **Select file or entry** →

- QR Code is created.

- 5

- QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries

In , **Phone Book** → → **Select entry** → →

From My Details

In , **My Details** → → →

From Entered Text

In , **Text Input** → → **Enter text** → →

Switching Storage Media

In , → **Save to** → → **Phone or Memory Card** → →

Attaching to S! Mail

In , → **Send As Message** → → **Complete message** →

Incoming Calls

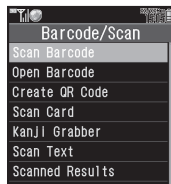
- QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Scanning Business Cards

Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.

- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

- 1** ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ●



- 2** **Scan Card** ➔ ●

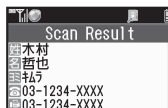
- 3** **Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

- 4** ●
- Press ● to stop scan.

- 5** ● ➔ **Scan results appear**



- 6** ● ➔ ●
- New Phone Book entry is saved.

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit

- Confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:

Yes ➔ ●

Switching Storage Media

After ●, ● ➔ **Save to** ➔ ● ➔ ●

Select storage media ➔ ● ➔ ●

Saving Scanned Image as Phone Book Picture

After ●, ● ➔ **Add Image** ➔ ● ➔ ●

On ➔ ● ➔ ●

Starting Over

After ●, ● ➔ **Yes** ➔ ● ➔ **From** ●

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	3
Switch to Photo Camera	7
Focus Lock	⏏
Mobile Light On/Off	⏏
Adjust Brightness	⏏
Open Help	0

Advanced

- Saving to Notepad ● Pasting to message text ● Copying text (P.9-44)

Scanning Text

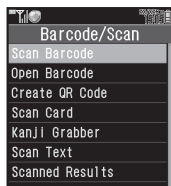
Scan text and save it to Notepad, etc.

Available Modes:

Full	Capture text in full screen and scan a selected line
Line	Capture a few lines of text and scan a selected line

- To toggle mode, press in scan window.
- Some text cannot be scanned.

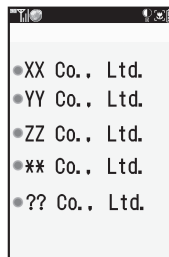
1 \Rightarrow **Tools** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow



2 **Scan Text** \Rightarrow

- To change mode, press in scan window.

3 **Frame text in center of Display**



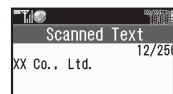
Scan Window

4 \Rightarrow **Scan starts**

- Press to stop scan.

5 **Select line** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Scan results appear**

6



7 \Rightarrow **Notepad** \Rightarrow

Correcting Text Type

After , \Rightarrow **Change Mode** \Rightarrow

\Rightarrow **Select type** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **From**

Editing Scanned Text

After , \Rightarrow **Select/Edit** \Rightarrow

Select character \Rightarrow **Select alternative from list or edit directly** \Rightarrow **From**

Starting Over

In , \Rightarrow **Yes** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **From**

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

Advanced

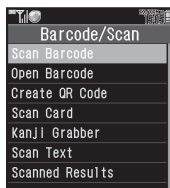
- Scanning and pasting during text entry
- Scanning more text
- Saving scan results
- Saving linked info to Phone Book
- Opening saved scan results
- Using linked info
- Pasting to message text
- Copying text (P.9-44 - 9-45)

Using Kanji Grabber

Scan a word of up to ten kanji and look it up in dictionaries.

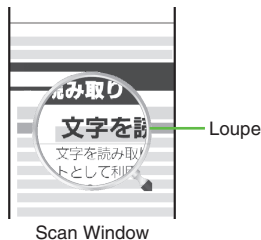
Some text cannot be scanned.

- 1 → **Tools** → → → **Doc./Rec.** → **Barcode/Scan** →



- 2 **Kanji Grabber** →

3 Frame kanji in Loupe



- 4
 - Scan results (kanji) appear.

- 5

- 6 **Select dictionary** → → **Search** →

- 7 **Select word, etc.** →
 - Definition/translation window opens.

Starting Over

In , → From

Key Assignments in Scan Window

Toggle 2x Magnification On/Off	
Toggle Focus Mode	
Switch to Photo Camera	
Focus Lock	
Mobile Light On/Off	
Adjust Brightness	
Open Help	

Advanced

- Scanning and pasting during text entry (P.9-45)

Calendar

View Settings

Changing default view	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Calendar Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Default View</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select type ➔ ●</p>
Jumping to specified date	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ 8 ➔ Enter date ➔ ●</p>
Changing date color	<p><i>Start Here</i> ● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>By Days of the Week</p> <p>☰ ➔ <i>Calendar Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Set Color</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>By Week</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select day ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ●</p> <p>By Date</p> <p>Select date ➔ 4 ➔ Select color ➔ ●</p> <p>• Not available in 6Month View.</p> <p>Resetting "By Date" Colors</p> <p>☰ ➔ <i>Calendar Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Set Color</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Reset Color</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p>
Selecting task view option	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ <i>Calendar Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Tasks View</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ●</p>
Adding stamps (Month/3Month View)	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ 2 ➔ Select stamp ➔ ●</p>
Hiding schedules	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calendar</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select date ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ <i>Secret:</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ ● ➔ ☰</p>

Saving additional holidays

Start Here ● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ *Calendar Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Set Holiday* ➔ ● ➔ ➔ *Private* ➔ See below

Adding Holidays

<Empty> ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● ➔ Enter date ➔ ● ➔ Select frequency ➔ ● ➔ ☰

Editing Added Holidays

Select holiday ➔ ☰ ➔ *Edit* ➔ ● ➔ *Name:* ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● ➔ *Date:* ➔ ● ➔ Enter date ➔ ● ➔ Select frequency ➔ ● ➔ ☰

Removing/restoring holidays

● ➔ *Tools* ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* ➔ ● ➔ ☰ ➔ *Calendar Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Set Holiday* ➔ ● ➔ ☹ ➔ *Private or Public* ➔ Select holiday ➔ ● (☐/☑)

■ Saving/Editing Schedules

Setting Category/ Location	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ Select date ● ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ● ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Category Category: ● ➔ ● ➔ Select Category ● ➔ ● ➔ </p> <p>Location Location: ● ➔ ● ➔ Enter location ● ➔ ● ➔ </p>
Creating Categories	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Calendar Settings ● ➔ ● ➔ Set Category ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Renaming Categories Select Category ● ➔ ● ➔ Edit Category Name ● ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ● ➔ ●</p> <p>Changing Icons Select Category ● ➔ ● ➔ Change Icon ● ➔ ● ➔ Select Pictogram ● ➔ ●</p> <p>Resetting ➔ Reset Settings ● ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ● ➔ ● ➔ Yes ● ➔ ●</p>
Saving repetitive schedules	<p>● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ Select date ● ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ● ➔ ● ➔ Repeat: ● ➔ ● ➔ Select frequency ● ➔ ● ➔ Enter repeat time ● ➔ ● ➔ </p> <p>● Repeat time is not available for <i>Every Year</i>.</p>

Saving S! Friend's Status information	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ Select date ● ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ● ➔ ● ➔ S! Friend's Status: ● ➔ ● ➔ Link Setting: ● ➔ ● ➔ Linked ● ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Availability Answer Status: ● ➔ ● ➔ Edit ● ➔ ➔ ➔ ➔ </p> <p>● Set Category first.</p> <p>Comment Comment: ● ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ </p> <p>● Set Category first.</p>
Editing entries	<p>● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ Select date ● ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ● ➔ ● ➔ Select item ● ➔ ● ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving schedules ● ➔ </p>
Changing Alarm tone/video & duration	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ Select date ● ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ● ➔ ● ➔ Alarm: ● ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: ● ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ● ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ </p> <p>● Select start point if required.</p> <p>Duration Duration: ● ➔ ● ➔ Select time ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ </p>
Changing Alarm volume	<p>● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Alarm Settings ● ➔ ● ➔ Alarm Volume: ● ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ● ➔ ●</p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>● ➔ Tools ● ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Calendar ● ➔ ● ➔ ➔ Alarm Settings ● ➔ ● ➔ Vibration: ● ➔ ● ➔ Select option ● ➔ ●</p>

Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☐ → *Alarm Settings* → ●
 → *For Manner Mode:* → ● → *Ring* → ● → *Yes* → ●

■ Managing Schedules

Searching entries

[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below

By Subject

6 → Enter subject → ●

By Category

9 → Select Category → ●

Checking memory status

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → Select date → ☐ → *Memory Status* → ●

Deleting all entries

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☐ → *Delete* → ● → *All Appointments* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → *Yes* → ●

Deleting entries by specifying week (Week View)

[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below

Within One Week

Select date → ☐ → *Delete* → ● → *All This Week* → ● → *Yes* → ●

Up to the End of Previous Week

Select date → ☐ → *Delete* → ● → *Up to Last Week* → ● → *Yes* → ●

Deleting entries by specifying month (Month/3Month View)

[Start Here] ● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → See below

Within One Month

Select date → ☐ → *Delete* → ● → *All This Month* → ● → *Yes* → ●

Up to the End of Previous Month

Select date → ☐ → *Delete* → ● → *Up to Last Month* → ● → *Yes* → ●

Deleting entries in six months (6Month View)

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Calendar* → ● → ☐ → *Delete* → ● → *All This 6Months* → ● → *Yes* → ●

Tasks

■ Task List

Hiding tasks

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* → ● → Select task → ☐ → *Edit* → ●
 → *Secret:* → ● → *On* → ● → ☑

■ Saving/Editing Tasks

Editing tasks

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* → ● → Select task → ☐ → *Edit* → ●
 → Select item → ● → Edit in the same manner as saving tasks → ☑

Setting priority

● → *Tools* → ● → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, *Tasks* → ● → Select task → ☐ → *Edit* → ●
 → *Priority:* → ● → Select priority → ● → ☑

Changing Alarm tone/ video & duration	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Select task → Edit → Alarm: → See below</p> <p>Alarm Tone/Video Assign Tone/Video: → Select folder → Select tone/file → • Select start point if required.</p> <p>Duration Duration: → Select time →</p>
	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level →</p>
Changing Alarm volume	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Alarm Settings → Alarm Volume: → Adjust level →</p>
Selecting Vibration option	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Alarm Settings → Vibration: → Select option →</p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Alarm Settings → For Manner Mode: → Ring → Yes →</p>

Managing Tasks

Searching tasks	<p>Start Here → Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Find → See below</p> <p>By Subject By Subject → Enter subject →</p> <p>By Due Date By Due Date → Enter date →</p>
	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Sort → Priority →</p>
Sorting tasks by priority	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Sort → Priority →</p>
Checking memory status	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Memory Status →</p>
Deleting all tasks	<p>→ Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Tasks → Delete → All Tasks → Enter Handset Code → Yes →</p>

Alarms

Editing entries	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Saving entry name	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ <i>Subject:</i> ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p>Ⓜ ➔ ● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select start point if required. <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video <i>Customized Screen</i> ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Setting handset to vibrate at Alarm Time	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ <i>Vibration:</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>On or Link to Sound</i> ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select <i>Link to Sound</i> to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>For Manner Mode</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Ring</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●</p>
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Alarms</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Link to World Clk</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>On</i> ➔ ●</p>

Wakeup TV

Editing entries	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Edit in the same manner as saving entries ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Changing Alarm tone/video	<p>Ⓜ ➔ ● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> ➔ ● ➔ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ <i>Assign Tone/Video:</i> ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select tone/file ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select start point if required. <p>Using Customized Screen Tone/Video <i>Customized Screen</i> ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ</p>
Sounding Alarm tone even in Manner mode	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Wakeup TV</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>For Manner Mode</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Ring</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Yes</i> ➔ ●</p>

Calculator

Copying calculation results	While result appears, Ⓜ ➔ <i>Copy</i> ➔ ●
Changing exchange rate for currency conversion	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calculator</i> ➔ ● ➔ Ⓜ ➔ <i>Money Converter</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Exchange Rate</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>Domestic or Foreign</i> ➔ ● ➔ Enter rate ➔ ●</p>
Converting currencies	<p>● ➔ <i>Tools</i> ➔ ● ➔ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, <i>Calculator</i> ➔ ● ➔ Enter amount of money ➔ Ⓜ ➔ <i>Money Converter</i> ➔ ● ➔ <i>To Domestic or To Foreign</i> ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set Exchange Rate first.

Expenses Memo	
Changing Category of saved entry	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Expenses Memo ➤ ● ➤ Totals ➤ ● ➤ Select entry ➤ ● ➤ Select Category ➤ ●
Changing amount	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Expenses Memo ➤ ● ➤ Totals ➤ ● ➤ Select entry ➤ ⊕ ➤ Change Amount ➤ ● ➤ Edit ➤ ●
Renaming Categories	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Expenses Memo ➤ ● ➤ Edit Category ➤ ● ➤ Select Category ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ●

Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to view e-money balances	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Balance Info ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ <Empty> ➤ ● ➤ S! Appli or Lifestyle-Appli ➤ ● ➤ Select application ➤ ● • For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications. • Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.
Moving applications up/down Balance Info list	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Balance Info ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Select application ➤ ⊕ ➤ Move ➤ ● ➤ Select target location ➤ ●
Removing applications from Balance Info list	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Balance Info ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Select application ➤ ⊖ ➤ Delete ➤ ●

Customizing handset response to reader/writer commands	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Interface Settings ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ● ➤ Off ➤ ●
Opening IC Card properties	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Status ➤ ●
Changing IC Card Lock notice recipient	<div>Start Here</div> ● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Remote Lock ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Mail Remote Lock ➤ ● ➤ Notice Settings ➤ ● ➤ Send Notice ➤ ● ➤ See below Changing Recipient To Set Recipient ➤ ● ➤ Set Recipient ➤ ● ➤ Select method ➤ ● ➤ Select/enter number/address ➤ ● ➤ SEND ➤ ● ➤ Y • Omit step of pressing SEND when selecting Phone Book as setting method. Disabling Notice Off ➤ ● ➤ SEND ➤ ● ➤ Y
Changing required Missed Call count for Call Remote Lock	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Remote Lock ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Call Remote Lock ➤ ● ➤ Count for Lock ➤ ● ➤ Enter Missed Call count ➤ ● ➤ Y
Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings	● ➤ Tools ➤ ● ➤ In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Osaifu-Keitai ➤ ● ➤ IC Card Settings ➤ ● ➤ Set to Default ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●

Simulated Call

Starting via Simulated Call menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call → Receive Simulated Call → Yes Simulated Call starts immediately regardless of Receive Timing setting. Settings remain even after starting Simulated Call during setup.
Clearing caller information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call → Set Caller → Yes
Overriding Silent volume setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → In PIM/Lifestyle menu, Simulated Call → For Silent Mode → Ring → Yes

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder tone/video	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Hour Minder → Advanced → Assign Tone/Video → Select folder → Select tone/file Select start point if required.
Setting handset to vibrate at Hour Minder Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Hour Minder → Advanced → Vibration → On or Link to Sound Select Link to Sound to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Sounding Hour Minder tone even in Manner mode

Tools → Clocks/Gauges → **Hour Minder** → **Advanced** → **For Manner Mode** → **Ring** → **Yes**

Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time

Tools → Clocks/Gauges → **Hour Minder** → **Advanced** → **Link to World Clk** → **On**

Pedometer

Changing Pedometer indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings → In Phone menu, Display → Standby Display → Pedometer → Select item
Using Pedometer Calendar	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Pedometer → Pedometer Calendar → Select date Degree of achievement appears. Press [X] or [H] to view previous or next month.
Checking accumulated data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Pedometer → Accumulated Data Change in body information is reflected in the data.
Resetting accumulated data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Pedometer → Accumulated Data → Reset Walk Data → Enter Handset Code → Yes Averages are also reset.

Customizing achievement notice	Start Here → Tools → Clocks/Gauges → Pedometer → Settings → Target → Goal Announce → On See below
	Changing Tone Goal Sound → Select pattern
	Changing Tone Volume Goal Volume → Adjust level
	Selecting Vibration Option Vibration → Select option
	Changing Duration Duration → Select time • For custom Duration, select Other and press .

Notepad

Editing Notepad	Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → See below
	Editing Text Edit Text → Edit
	Changing Category Change Category → Select Category
Searching text within all entries	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Search → Enter text
Inserting Notepad text into message text	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → As Message Text → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message • S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Sending entries via S! Mail	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Send → Via Message → Complete message
Creating text files	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Create Text File → Enter name → Save here
Importing text files	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Import Text File → Select file
Checking memory status	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Setting/Manage → Memory Status
Opening properties	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Notepad → Select entry → Details

Voice Recorder

Saving longer recordings	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Record Time → Extended Voice → Recording starts → Recording ends • Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode. (Recording is saved automatically.)
Sending Voice files via S! Mail	Tools → Doc./Rec. → Voice Recorder → Recording starts → Recording ends → Save and Send → Complete message • Available in For Message mode.

Switching storage media

- ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Voice Recorder** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Save Recording to** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●
- Available in **For Message** mode.
 - Set to **Ask Each Time** to select media after every recording.

Scan Barcode

Scanning during text entry

[Start Here] In a text entry window, ● ➔ **Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scan Code** ➔ ● ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ ● ➔ **See below**

Pasting All Scan Results



Pasting a Part of Scan Results

● ➔ **Select first character** ➔ ● ➔ **Highlight text range** ➔ ●

Scanning continuously

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Continuous Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ● ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ ●

- Choose **Yes** to continue scanning or **No** and press ● to view scan results.

Reading saved barcode images

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Open Barcode** ➔ ● ➔ **Select file** ➔ ●

Saving scan results

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ ● ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Save** ➔ ●

Saving to Notepad

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ ● ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Notepad** ➔ ●

Saving linked info to Phone Book

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ ● ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ ● ➔ **Select number or mail address** ➔ ● ➔ **Save to Ph.Book** ➔ ● ➔ **As New Entry** ➔ ● ➔ **Complete other fields** ➔ ●

- To add to an existing entry, select **As New Detail**.
- When **MEMORY:** appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.

Opening saved scan results

● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scanned Results** ➔ ● ➔ **Select file** ➔ ●

- Select a file and press ● to rename files, open properties or delete files.
- Some files may not open.

Using linked info

[Start Here] ● ➔ **Tools** ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ **Doc./Rec.** ➔ **Barcode/Scan** ➔ ● ➔ **Scan Barcode** ➔ ● ➔ **Frame barcode in center of Display** ➔ ● ➔ **See below**

Dialing Numbers

Select phone number ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔

Sending Messages

Select mail address ➔ ● ➔ **Complete message** ➔ ●

- When **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Composition window.

Accessing Internet Sites

Select URL ➔ ●

Using images as Wallpaper	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select image ➔ ☐ ➔ Set as Wallpaper ➔ ● ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For images smaller or larger than Display, Wallpaper Display options appear; follow onscreen prompts.
Saving images & melodies	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ☐ ➔ To Data Folder ➔ ●</p>
Opening or playing files	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●</p>
Using images for System Graphics	<p>● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ Select image ➔ ☐ ➔ As System ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Specify image area ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Pasting to message text	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ☐ ➔ Send Message ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>All Text</p> <p>● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ ⌵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	<p>Selected Text</p> <p>☐ ➔ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ● ➔ S! Mail or SMS ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ ⌵</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Tools ➔ ● ➔ ⌂ Doc./Rec. ➔ Barcode/Scan ➔ ● ➔ Scan Barcode ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ See below</p> <p>Text</p> <p>☐ ➔ Copy ➔ ● ➔ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ Highlight text range ➔ ●</p> <p>Number, Address or URL</p> <p>Select number, mail address or URL ➔ ☐ ➔ Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL ➔ ●</p>

Scan Card

Saving to Notepad	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Card</i> → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● → ☺ → Notepad → ●</p>
Pasting to message text	<p>[Start Here] ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Card</i> → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● → ☺ → <i>Send Message</i> → ● → See below</p> <p>All Text</p> <p>● → <i>SI Mail or SMS</i> → ● → Complete message → ☺</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SI Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count. <p>Selected Text</p> <p>☺ → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ● → <i>SI Mail or SMS</i> → ● → Complete message → ☺</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SI Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
Copying text	<p>[Start Here] ● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Card</i> → ● → Frame card in center of Display → ● → See below</p> <p>Text</p> <p>☺ → <i>Copy</i> → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●</p>

Scan Text

Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, ☺ → <i>Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ●</p>
Scanning more text	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → ☺ → <i>Continue Part</i> or <i>Scan More</i> → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select <i>Continue Part</i> to enter additional text or <i>Scan More</i> to enter text after a line break.
Saving scan results	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → ☺ → <i>Save</i> → ●</p>
Saving linked info to Phone Book	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scan Text</i> → ● → Frame text in center of Display → ● → Select line → ● → ● → Select number or mail address → ☺ → <i>Save to Ph.Book</i> → ● → <i>As New Entry</i> → ● → Complete other fields → ☺</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To add to an existing entry, select <i>As New Detail</i>.
Opening saved scan results	<p>● → <i>Tools</i> → ● → ☺ <i>Doc./Rec.</i> → <i>Barcode/Scan</i> → ● → <i>Scanned Results</i> → ● → Select file → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select a file and press ☺ to rename files, open properties or delete files. • Some files may not open.

Using linked info	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → See below</p>
	<p>Dialing Numbers Select phone number → </p>
	<p>Sending Messages Select mail address → Complete message </p>
Pasting to message text	<p>Accessing Internet Sites Select URL </p>
	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → Send Message → See below</p>
	<p>All Text → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.
	<p>Selected Text → Select first character → Highlight text range → S! Mail or SMS → Complete message </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.


Copying text	<p>Start Here → Tools → Doc./Rec. → Barcode/Scan → Scan Text → Frame text in center of Display → Select line → See below</p>
	<p>Text → Copy → Select first character → Highlight text range </p>
	<p>Number, Address or URL Select number, mail address or URL → Copy Telephone, Copy Address or Copy URL </p>
Kanji Grabber	
Scanning and pasting during text entry	<p>In a text entry window, → Scan → Kanji Grabber → Frame kanji in Loupe → Scan results appear </p>

Osaifu-Keitai®

? Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)

- Battery may be low. Charge battery or install a charged battery.

? Recognition via reader/writer takes time

- Check  logo area. Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.

? Call Remote Lock does not activate even after specified number of Missed Calls

- Missed Call count is reset by calls from other numbers. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
- When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

Wakeup TV

? TV does not activate with specified channel

- If Wakeup TV Time arrives while TV is active, channel does not switch to the specified one.

Voice Recorder

? Cannot record properly

- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.

? Noise/skipping occurs

- Avoid shocks to handset while recording; may cause noise or skipping.

? Recording takes time to start

- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Scanning Barcode/Card/Text

? Cannot read barcodes properly

- Scan may fail if barcode is dirty or unclear.
- Scan may fail if barcode is scanned under inadequate light.
- Scan may fail if multiple barcodes are captured at one time.

? Cannot read barcodes during text entry

- Scanning is not available during calls or when mobile camera is active.

? Cannot read barcode images in Data Folder automatically

- When scan fails, follow onscreen instructions and select next barcode image manually.

? Cannot scan business cards properly

- Scan fails if business card is printed in light-colored text on a dark background, handwritten or printed in casual/decorative fonts, decorated with a background pattern, or designed with both vertical and horizontal text.
- Scan may fail if business card is printed in light-colored text on a light background, printed in italics or extremely small fonts, decorated with a logo or logo-like text, printed on a glossy paper or other material, or dirty/folded.

? Cannot scan text properly

- Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.

Mobile Widget	10-2
Customizing Standby Display (Japanese).....	10-2
S! Quick News	10-5
Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)	10-5
S! Information Channel	10-6
S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)	10-6
e-Books	10-7
Reading e-Books (Japanese)	10-7

S! Friend's Status	10-8
Using S! Friend's Status	10-8
S! Circle Talk	10-11
Using S! Circle Talk	10-11
Near Chat	10-13
Using Near Chat (Japanese).....	10-13
Blog Tool	10-14
Blogging	10-14
Additional Functions	10-16
Troubleshooting	10-23

10

Entertainment & Communication



Customizing Standby Display (Japanese)

Paste various widgets (applications) to Standby to access/activate information/functions immediately from Standby.

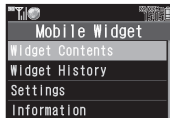


S! Quick News &
S! Friend's Status Widget

Widgets

Obtaining Widgets

- 1 → **Entertainment** → → **Mobile Widget** →



Mobile Widget Menu

- 2 **Widget Contents** →



Widget List

- 3 **Download** →
- Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets

- Some widgets may need to be installed manually; follow these steps:

[Widget List] Select widget → →

Install → → Yes →

Activating Single Widgets

[Widget List] Select widget → →

Deleting Widgets

- 1 In Widget list, select widget



- S!速報ニュース/S!ともだち状況 cannot be deleted.

- 2 **Delete** → → Yes →

Deleting All Widgets

In Widget list, **Download** → →

Delete All → → Enter Handset

Code → → Yes →

- If there is a widget saved in Standby, a confirmation appears; follow onscreen prompt.

Advanced

- Opening properties
- Opening widget notification history
- Canceling automatic updates
- Receiving updates automatically while abroad
- Hiding confirmation abroad
- Disabling widget notifications
- Disabling cookies
- Deleting cookies (P.10-16)



Saving Widgets to Standby

- 1
- 2 Use to select (OPEN)
➡



- 3 Select widget ➡
- Corresponding icon appears in Standby.

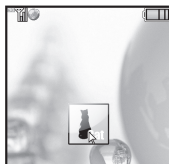
- 4 Use to specify target location ➡

Using Pointer (👉)

- After 1, Long Press (👉) to activate pointer navigation; select widgets, etc.
- To cancel pointer navigation, Long Press (👉).

Using Widgets

- 1 ➡ Use to select widget ➡



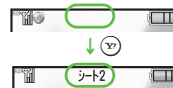
- 2
- Widget activates; follow onscreen instructions.

Using Sheets

Paste widgets and Standby Shortcuts on each sheet; toggle sheets to use them.

Toggling Sheets

- 1 ➡



- To toggle further, press or .
- Sheet name appears at the top, then disappears.
- Save widgets as needed; corresponding icons appear on the current sheet.

Advanced

- 👉 Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN
- 👉 Moving widgets
- 👉 Viewing widget-related information (Japanese)
- 👉 Slowing pointer speed
- 👉 Editing sheet names
- 👉 Locking sheets (And more on P.10-16 - 10-17)



Saving Widgets on Other Sheets

- 1 In Widget list, select widget
➡
- 2 Set as StbyShortcut ➡



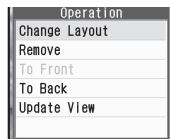
- 3 Select sheet ➡



- 4 Specify target location ➡

Removing Widgets from Standby

- 1 ➡ Use to select widget ➡
- 2 Operation ➡



- 3 Remove ➡
- 4 Yes ➡

Using S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget

935SH is preloaded with *S!速報ニュース*/*S!ともだち状況* (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status widget) that shows S! Quick News and S! Friend's Status information in Standby.



View Settings

Setting View Pattern

- 1 ➡ Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➡
- 2 Settings ➡ ➡ Pattern Setting ➡
- 3 Select item ➡ (✓) ➡

Switching View

- 1 ➡ Use to select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➡
- 2 Operation ➡ ➡ Switch Pattern ➡

• Repeat the above steps to switch the view.

Advanced

- Removing widgets at once by sheet
- Adding news items
- Changing news scroll speed
- Showing unread news only
- Showing news images
- Assigning members
- Managing members (P.10-17 - 10-18)



Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news.
Transmission fees apply.

Registering S! Quick News Items

- 1 ➡ **Entertainment** ➡ ➡ **S! Quick News** ➡



S! Quick News Menu

- 2 **S! Quick News List** ➡



S! Quick News List

- 3 **登録はこちら** ➡ ➡ **Yes** ➡

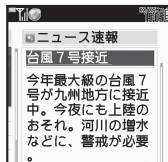
- Handset connects to the Internet.

- 4 **Select item** ➡
• Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

- 1 **In S! Quick News List, select item** ➡
• Title list appears.

- 2 **Select title** ➡



- Press to return to title list, or to open next title.

Updating Items Manually

- [S! Quick News List] **Select item** ➡ ➡ **更新** ➡ ➡ **一件 or 全件** ➡

Indicators

	Unread Special news		Unread General news
	Read Special news		Read General news
	Unread News Flash		Auto update disabled
	Read News Flash		

Advanced

- Updating S! Quick News list automatically
- Checking update schedule
- Deleting S! Quick News items
- Resetting S! Quick News List
- Changing background image
- Accessing source sites
- Disabling image download (P.10-18 - 10-19)



S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically; use Weather Indicator as needed. Transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

- 1 ● ➡ **Entertainment** ➡ ●
➡ **S! Information Channel/Weather** ➡ ●



S! Information Channel Menu

- 2 **Registration/Cancel** ➡ ●
- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

- 1 **While Information window appears, S! Info. Channel** ➡ ●
- S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
 - S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

- 2 ☎ ➡ **Page closes**

Opening Unread Latest Issue

[S! Information Channel Menu]

What's New ➡ ●

Opening Back Issues

[S! Information Channel Menu] **Back**

Issue ➡ ● ➡ **Select date** ➡ ●

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

☀	Clear skies (day)	❄	Snow
☾	Clear skies (night)	⚡	Thunder showers
☁	Cloudy	▶	Then
☔	Rain	/	Partly/chance of

Example: ☁/☔ ➡ Partly cloudy with a chance of rain

Indicators other than the above also appear for more information.

Manual Update

[S! Information Channel Menu]

Weather Indicator ➡ ● ➡ **Manual**

Update ➡ ● ➡ **Yes** ➡ ●

Advanced

- Hiding Information window for new received info ● Changing Display Size ● Changing scroll unit ● Copying text ● Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby
● Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates ● Hiding Information window for weather updates (And more on **P.10-19 - 10-20**)



Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1 ☰ ➡ メニューリスト ➡ ●

2 書籍・コミック・写真集 ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.
- Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

Note

- Alternatively, go to SH-web Mobile Internet site (サーチ・メーカー・サイトSH-web in Bookmarks; see P.5-7) for e-Books.

e-Book Viewer

Read XPDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1 ● ➡ Entertainment ➡ ●



Entertainment Menu

2 e-Book Viewer ➡ ●

- e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1 In Entertainment menu, BookSurfing ➡ ●

- BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Advanced

- ☞ ● Copying text ● Opening non-935SH e-Books (Library) ● Using Library (P.10-20)



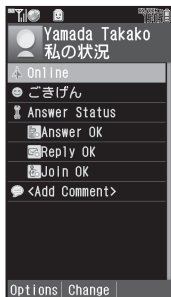
Using S! Friend's Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

- Save and organize members in Groups.
- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to **Online** first.

First S! Friend's Status Use

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book; Status, Availability and Comment are sent to the members.



1 (Long)



2 Yes ➔ ●



3 Yes ➔ ●

4 Phone Book ➔ ●

5 Select entry ➔ ● ➔ Select phone number ➔ ●



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.

6 Yes ➔ ●

- Registration request is sent to the number.

When Request is Accepted

- An acceptance notice arrives; My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry

In 4, **Add New Entry** ➔ ● ➔ Enter phone number ➔ ● ➔ 5

Advanced

- Adding members
- Deleting members
- Moving members
- Renaming Groups
- Rejecting requests
- Updating manually
- Opening notices
- Sending My Details image (And more on P.10-21)



Opening Member Status

1  (Long) ➡  Select Group



My Status
Member Status

2 Select member ➡ 



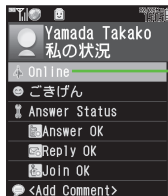
When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Changing My Status


Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

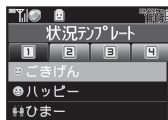
1  (Long) ➡ 私の状況 ➡ 



Connection Status

My Status Window

2 Select Status, e.g., ごきげん ➡ 



Status Template Window



3 Select new Status ➡ 

4 Select Availability, e.g., Answer OK ➡  ➡ Select new Availability ➡ 





5 <Add Comment> ➡  ➡ Enter text ➡ 

6  ➡ Update starts



Changing Connection Status

[My Status Window] Online (or Offline) ➡  ➡ Select status ➡ 




Changing Status Icon/Label

[Status Template Window] Select Status ➡  ➡ Status Icon or Status Label ➡  ➡ Select Pictogram or enter text ➡  ➡ 

Changing Availability Settings at Once

In 4, Answer Status ➡  ➡ Select new Answer Status ➡  ➡ From 5

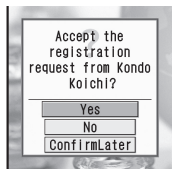
Editing My Status Name

[My Status Window]  ➡ Edit Name ➡  ➡ Edit ➡ 



Receiving Request from Unsaved Numbers

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



1 Yes ➡ ●

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

Rejecting

In 1, No ➡ ● ➡ Yes ➡ ●

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For **ConfirmLater**, Information window opens.

Creating Status Templates

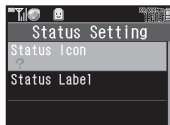
Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.



1 In Status Template window, ➡ New Entry ➡ ●

2 Enter name ➡ ●

3 <未定> ➡ ●



4 Status Icon ➡ ● ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ●

5 Status Label ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ Y?

6 Repeat 3 - 5 ➡ Y? ➡ Saved

Saving to Data Folder

[Status Template Window] ⌂ Select template ➡ ☰ ➡ Save to DF ➡ ● ➡ Save here ➡ ●

Loading Templates via Data Folder

[Status Template Window] ☰ ➡ Add Template ➡ ● ➡ Select template ➡ ●

Renaming Templates

[Status Template Window] ⌂ Select template ➡ ☰ ➡ Edit Temp. Name ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Advanced

- Resetting templates (P.10-21)



Using S! Circle Talk

Use handset like a walkie-talkie to speak to multiple parties simultaneously.

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

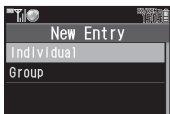
Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

1 **Communication** **S! Circle Talk**

- When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** and press , then skip ahead to **3**.

2 **<Add New Entry>**



3 **Group** **Group Name:** **Enter name**



4 **Select number, e.g., No.1:**

5 **Phone Book**

6 **Select entry** **Select phone number**



- Omit number selection step if only one number is saved.
- Repeat **4** - **6** to add members.

7 **Saved**

Saving as Individuals

- In **3**, **Individual** **5** - **5**
- Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List
- In **5**, **Members List** **Select member** **7**
- Omit when **Individual** is selected in **3**.

Advanced

- Editing individual members Editing Groups (P.10-22)

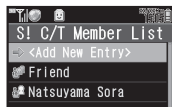


Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:

(First, set Connection status to *Online* (P.10-9).)

- 1 ➔ **Communication** ➔ ➔ **S! Circle Talk** ➔



- 2 ➔ **Select member or Group** ➔

- 3 ➔ **Transmission starts**

- S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.
- Loudspeaker activates automatically.

Direct Entry

Enter phone number ➔ ➔ **Call**
S! Circle Talk ➔ ➔

S! Circle Talk Operations

■ Speaking

- 1 ➔ **Press and hold** ➔ **Press and Hold** appears
➔ **You have the floor**



- **:My Turn** appears when you have the floor.

- 2 ➔ **Keep holding** ➔ **to speak**
➔ **Release** ➔ **Floor is released**

- Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Incoming Calls during S! Circle Talk

- Incoming calls are rejected. Set handset to exit S! Circle Talk to answer incoming calls as needed.

Canceling Loudspeaker
During S! Circle Talk,

- To reactivate, follow these steps:
 ➔ **While message appears**,

■ Exiting S! Circle Talk

- 1 ➔ **Connection ends**
- S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk

➔ **Select most recent S! Circle Talk record** ➔ ➔ **Rejoin Circle Talk** ➔

- Not available when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

- 1 ➔ **While handset is ringing/vibrating**, ➔ **S! Circle Talk starts**

- Alternatively, press .
- S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced

- Disabling Loudspeaker Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls (P.10-22)



Using Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten meters. (Available even when handset is out-of-range.) Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.

Access Restriction

- In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. In this case, Handset Code access must also be managed to prevent the execution of Memory All Clear that may be used to reset the application password.

Sending Near Chat Request

- 1** ● ➡ **Communication** ➡ ●
➡ **Near chat** ➡ ●

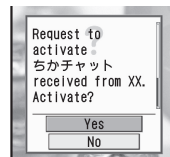


- 2** **Yes** ➡ ●

- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- A confirmation appears. Read the message and press ☺ (はい) or ☹ (いいえ).
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Receiving Near Chat Request

When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and S! Appli Notification appears.



After a period of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears.

- 1** **Yes** ➡ ●

- Near Chat S! Application starts.
- A confirmation appears. Read the message and press ☺ (はい) or ☹ (いいえ).
- For more, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Rejecting Request

In **1**, **No** ➡ ●



Blogging

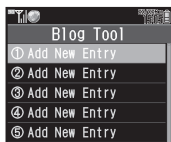
Save blog details to view or update blogs easily on handset.

Saving Blog Details

Setup for Posting via Mail

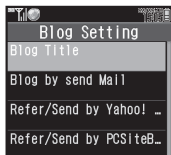
Follow these steps to save blog name and address for posting:

- 1 **Communication** **Blog Tool**



Blog Tool Window

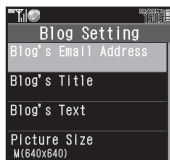
- 2 **Add New Entry**



Blog Setting Menu

- 3 **Blog Title** **Enter name**

- 4 **Blog by send Mail**



Blog Setting Menu (Mail)

- 5 **Blog's Email Address** **Enter mail address**

- 6

Saving Title/Text for Posts

After , **Blog's Title** or **Blog's Text** **Enter title or text**

- Saved title/text is entered automatically when posting.

Setting Image Size for Posting

After , **Picture Size** **Select size**

Setup for Posting via the Internet

Save URL for Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser, or both.

- 1 In **Blog Setting** menu, **Refer/Send by Yahoo! Keitai** or **Refer/Send by PC Site Browser**



- 2 **Blog's URL** **Enter URL**

- 3 **Refer Blog's URL** **Enter URL**

- 4

Advanced

- Editing entries Deleting entries (P.10-22)



Posting to Blogs

Complete setup for posting via mail/
Internet beforehand.

Posting via Mail

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➡ ●
- 2 **Blog by send Mail** ➡ ●
 - S! Mail Composition window opens with address entered.
 - Omit 2 if no URL is saved for posting.
- 3 Complete message ➡ ●

Posting via the Internet

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➡ ●
- 2 **Blog by send Browser** ➡ ●
 - Page of URL saved in *Blog's URL* opens.
 - Omit 2 if no address is saved for posting.
 - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

After 2, select browser ➡ ●

Opening Blog Page

- 1 In Blog Tool window, select entry ➡ ●
 - Page of URL saved in *Refer Blog's URL* opens.
 - If PC Site Browser message appears, follow onscreen prompts.

When URL is Saved for Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

After 1, select browser ➡ ●



Mobile Widget

Managing

Opening properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Widget Contents → ● → Select widget → ⊞ → Details → ● ● Select widget other than <i>S!速報ニュース!ともだち状況</i>.
--------------------	---

Widget History

Opening widget notification history	<p>Start Here ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Widget History → ● → See below</p>
	<p>Showing All Text</p> <p>Select record → ⊞ → View full text → ●</p>
	<p>Deleting a Record</p> <p>Select record → ⊞ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●</p>
	<p>Deleting All Records</p> <p>Select record → ⊞ → Delete All → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → Yes → ●</p>

Settings

Canceling automatic updates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Auto Refresh → ● → Off → ●
Receiving updates automatically while abroad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → AutoConnect Abroad → ● → On → ●
Hiding confirmation abroad	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Set Use Abroad → ● → Off → ●

Disabling widget notifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Notification Setting → ● → Off → ●
Disabling cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Cookies → ● → Disabled → ●
Deleting cookies	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● → Entertainment → ● → Mobile Widget → ● → Settings → ● → Delete Cookies → ● → Yes → ●

Operations in Standby

Logging in to Yahoo!JAPAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⌚ → ⊞ → Yahoo!JAPAN log in → ● ● Follow onscreen instructions. ● To log out, select Yahoo!JAPAN log out in the above steps.
Moving widgets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⌚ → Use ⌘ to select widget → ⊞ → Operation → ● → Change Layout → ● → Specify target location → ●
Moving widgets to front/back	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⌚ → Use ⌘ to select widget → ⊞ → Operation → ● → To Front or To Back → ●
Updating view	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ⌚ → Use ⌘ to select widget → ⊞ → Operation → ● → Update View → ●





Removing widgets at once by sheet	<p>Start Here (Start Here icon) → (Menu icon) → <i>Operate from List</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Remove</i> → (Select icon) → See below</p> <p>All Widgets <i>Remove All</i> → (Select icon) → Select sheet → (Yes icon) → Yes → (Select icon)</p> <p>Selected Widgets <i>Select also Remove</i> → (Select icon) → Select widget → (Select icon) (□/✓) → Complete selection → (Yes icon) → Yes → (Select icon)</p>
	<p>(Start Here icon) → (Menu icon) → <i>Information</i> → (Select icon)</p>
	<p>(Start Here icon) → (Menu icon) → <i>Settings</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Cursor Speed</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Slow</i> → (Select icon)</p>

■ Sheets

Editing sheet names	<p>Start Here (Start Here icon) → (Menu icon) → <i>Settings</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Sheet Settings</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Change Sheet Name</i> → (Select icon) → See below</p> <p>Renaming Select sheet → (Select icon) → Enter name → (Select icon)</p> <p>Resetting All Sheet Names (Menu icon) → Yes → (Select icon)</p>
	<p>Start Here (Start Here icon) → (Menu icon) → <i>Settings</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Sheet Settings</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Set Sheet Lock</i> → (Select icon) → Enter Handset Code → (Select icon) → See below</p> <p>Activating Lock Select sheet → (Select icon) → On → (Select icon)</p> <p>Changing Method for Temporary Access <i>Unlock Method</i> → (Select icon) → <i>No Password</i> → (Select icon)</p> <p>• Press (Start Here icon), then select (Menu icon) and press (Select icon) to unlock sheet temporarily.</p>

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Quick News)

Adding news items	<p>(Start Here icon) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu icon) → <i>Operation</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Add News</i> → (Select icon) → <i>S! Quick News List</i> → (Select icon) → <i>登録はこちら</i> → (Select icon) → Yes → (Select icon) → Select genre → (Select icon) → Select item → (Select icon)</p> <p>• Follow onscreen instructions.</p>
Changing news scroll speed	<p>(Start Here icon) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu icon) → <i>Operation</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Select icon) → <i>News Display</i> → (Select icon) → <i>News Speed</i> → (Select icon) → Select speed → (Select icon)</p>
Showing unread news only	<p>(Start Here icon) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu icon) → <i>Operation</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Select icon) → <i>News Display</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Target News</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Unread Only</i> → (Select icon)</p>
Showing news images	<p>(Start Here icon) → Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget → (Menu icon) → <i>Operation</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Contents Menu</i> → (Select icon) → <i>News Display</i> → (Select icon) → <i>Display Image</i> → (Select icon) → On → (Select icon)</p> <p>• Available when only S! Quick News area is set to appear on the Panel.</p>

■ S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status Widget (S! Friend's Status)

Assigning members	<p>When Pattern Setting is Not Friend's Status(List) ➔ Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➔ ➔ Use to select member field ➔ ➔ Operation ➔ ➔ Contents Menu ➔ ➔ Assign Member ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select entry/member ➔ </p> <p>When Pattern Setting is Friend's Status(List) ➔ Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➔ ➔ Operation ➔ ➔ Contents Menu ➔ ➔ Assign Member ➔ ➔ Select category ➔ ➔ Select entry/member ➔ ➔ (Empty) ➔ </p>
Managing members	<p>Start Here ➔ Select S! Quick News/S! Friend's Status widget ➔ ➔ Use to select member field ➔ ➔ Operation ➔ ➔ Contents Menu ➔ ➔ See below</p> <p>Deleting Members Delete ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p> <p>Changing Member Order Move ➔ ➔ (Up) or (Down) ➔ </p> <p>Changing Member Icons Change Icon ➔ ➔ Select Pictogram ➔ </p>

■ S! Quick News

■ Opening/Updating Items

Updating S! Quick News list automatically	<p> ➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Quick News ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Automatic Update ➔ ➔ Select item ➔ ➔ Select interval or choose On ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If a confirmation appears, press . • When Special is set to On, items are updated every four hours. • When General is set to On, items are updated once a day. • To cancel automatic update, choose Off and press . • Updating items may incur high charges. • Only available in Japan.
Checking update schedule	<p> ➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Quick News ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Check Schedule ➔ </p>
Deleting S! Quick News items	<p>Start Here ➔ ➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Quick News ➔ ➔ S! Quick News List ➔ ➔ Select item ➔ ➔ See below</p> <p>One Entry 一件 ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p> <p>All Entries 全件 ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p>
Resetting S! Quick News List	<p> ➔ Entertainment ➔ ➔ S! Quick News ➔ ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Delete S! Quick News Lists ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ➔ Yes ➔ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not available during automatic updates.



■ Other

Changing background image	● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>S! Quick News</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Settings</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Change Skin</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select pattern ➤ ●
Accessing source sites	● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>S! Quick News</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>S! Quick News List</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ● ➤ Select title ➤ ● ➤ Select title ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●
Disabling image download	● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>S! Quick News</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Settings</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Show Image</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Off</i> ➤ ●

S! Information Channel

■ Receiving Information

Hiding Information window for new received info	● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Notification</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Off</i> ➤ ●
Requesting re-delivery	● ➤ <i>Entertainment</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>S! Information Channel/Weather</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Get Latest Contents</i> ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●

■ Information Pages

Changing Display Size	On a page, ☰ ➤ <i>Settings</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Display Size</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select size ➤ ●
Changing scroll unit	On a page, ☰ ➤ <i>Settings</i> ➤ ● ➤ <i>Scroll Unit</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select unit ➤ ●
Copying text	On a page, ☰ ➤ <i>Copy Text</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select first character ➤ ● ➤ Highlight text range ➤ ●
Saving files to Data Folder	On a page, ☰ ➤ <i>Save Items</i> ➤ ● ➤ Select file ➤ ● ➤ <i>Save</i> ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ● ➤ <i>Save here</i> ➤ ● • Some files are saved automatically.
Opening page properties	On a page, ☰ ➤ <i>Details</i> ➤ ●



Weather Indicators

Checking weather forecast	● → Entertainment → ● → SI Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Weather → ●
Changing weather forecast page font size	On a page, ☐ → Settings → ● → Font Size → ● → Select size → ●
Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	● → Entertainment → ● → SI Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Standby Setting → ● → Off → ●
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	● → Entertainment → ● → SI Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Icon Update → ● → Off → ●
Hiding Information window for weather updates	● → Entertainment → ● → SI Information Channel/Weather → ● → Weather Indicator → ● → Settings → ● → Weather Notif. → ● → Off → ●

e-Books

Copying text	In open page, ㉞ → 文字列を北' - → ● → Select first character → ● → Highlight text range → ●
Opening non-935SH e-Books (Library)	● → Entertainment → ● → e-Book Viewer → ☐ → Select file → ● • Some files may not open.
Using Library	[Start Here] ● → Entertainment → ● → e-Book Viewer → ☐ → See below
	Adding Folders ☐ → New Folder → ● → Enter name → ●
	Switching Folders ☐ → Switch Folders → ● → Select folder → ●
	Renaming Folders/Files Select folder/file → ☐ → Rename → ● → Enter name → ●
	Moving Files Select file → ☐ → Move → ● → Select folder → ● → Move here → ●
	Deleting Folders/Files Select folder/file → ☐ → Delete → ● → Yes → ●
	Opening File Properties Select file → ☐ → Details → ●



S! Friend's Status

■ Members & Groups

Adding members	(Long) → Select Group → Add Member → Select method → Select entry or enter phone number → Yes → Select
Deleting members	(Long) → Select Group → Select member → Registration Release → Yes → Yes → Select <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.
Moving members	(Long) → Select Group → Select member → Change Group → Select target Group → Select
Renaming Groups	(Long) → Select Group → Edit Group Name → Enter name → Select
Rejecting requests	Start Here (Long) → Settings → Status → Request Reply → See below Rejecting Requests from Unsaved Numbers Confirm if Registered → Confirm <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically. Rejecting All Requests Always Ignore → Ignore <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.

■ Status & Availability

Saving custom Availability combinations	(Long) → Settings → Status → User Setting → Select type → Select Availability → Select
Changing Status Icon Pictogram or Status Label description	(Long) → Settings → Status → Select template → Select Status → Status Icon → Select Pictogram → Status Label → Enter text → Select

■ Status Templates

Resetting templates	Start Here (Long) → 私の状況 → Select Status → See below One Template Select template → Reset → Yes → Select All Templates Reset All → Yes → Select
---------------------	--

■ Member Status & Notices

Updating manually	(Long) → Settings → Status → Update → Select
Opening notices	(Long) → Status Notif. List → Select notice → Select

■ My Details

Sending My Details image	(Long) → Select Group → Select member → Send Image → Yes → Select
--------------------------	---



S! Circle Talk

■ Member List

Editing individual members	<p>[Start Here] → Communication → S! Circle Talk → Select member → See below</p> <p>Replacing Members</p> <p>Edit → Select method → Select entry</p> <p>Deleting Members</p> <p>Delete → Yes</p>
	<p>[Start Here] → Communication → S! Circle Talk → Select Group → See below</p> <p>Editing Group Name/Members</p> <p>Edit → Select target → Edit/enter</p> <p>Deleting Group Members</p> <p>Edit → Select member → Delete → Yes</p> <p>Deleting Groups</p> <p>Delete → Yes</p>

■ Settings

Disabling Loudspeaker	Communication → S! Circle Talk → Loudspeaker → Off
Exiting S! Circle Talk for incoming calls	Communication → S! Circle Talk → Incoming Calls → Voice Calls or Video Calls → Accept Calls

Blog Tool

Editing entries	Communication → Blog Tool → Select entry → Edit → Select item → Edit → Blog Title after editing.
Deleting entries	Communication → Blog Tool → Select entry → Delete → Yes





S! Friend's Status



Cannot use S! Friend's Status

- Set IP Service Setting to **On**.



Handset rejected a registration request automatically

- Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered or handset fails to respond within two hours.



Registration request arrived from a deleted member

- Registration request arrives when a member fails to receive cancellation notice within 24 hours.



Registration request was sent to a member automatically

- Registration request is sent automatically when handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours.



Cannot create Status Templates

- Three templates may already be added; reset one and retry.

S! Circle Talk



Cannot use S! Circle Talk

- Set IP Service Setting to **On**.



S! Circle Talk starts automatically

- Check My Status; handset accepts S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to **Auto Join**.



Cannot accept S! Circle Talk requests

- Check My Status; handset rejects S! Circle Talk requests automatically if S! Circle Talk Availability is set to **Join NG**.

Near Chat



Cannot receive Near Chat requests

- S! Appli Request may be set to **Off**.

S! Quick News



Cannot receive content updates

- Update may fail out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
- Automatic Update does not affect S! Quick News List News Flash update items overnight.
- USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.

Handset Security	11-2
Operations Security	11-2
Information Security.....	11-3

Function Control	11-4
Using Function Control.....	11-4
Additional Functions	11-5

11

Handset Security



Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
Once	Lock immediately; setting is canceled once handset is unlocked
At Power On	Lock when handset is turned on; Handset Code entry window opens

- 1 **Settings** **In Phone menu, Locks**



Locks Menu

- 2 **Function Lock**
 3 **Select option** **Enter Handset Code**

Unlocking Temporarily

While handset is locked, enter
Handset Code

When Function Lock is Active

- Press corresponding key to turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 **In Locks menu, PIN Entry** **Switch On/Off**
 2 **On** **Enter PIN**

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock. For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23) or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-41).

Advanced

- Changing PIN Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear (P.11-5)



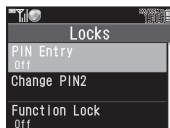
Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

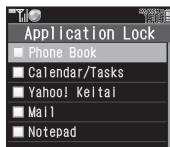


- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ **In Phone menu, Locks** ➔



Locks Menu

- 2 **Application Lock** ➔



- 3 **Select item** ➔ (✓)

For Phone Book, select **No Refer** or **Refer** and press .

- 4 ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

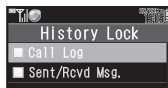
Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press .

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

- 1 In Locks menu, **History Lock** ➔



- 2 **Select item** ➔ (✓)

- 3 ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press .

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

- 1 In Locks menu, **Show Secret Data** ➔
- 2 **On** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

When Show Secret Data is Active

- Predictive is not available for text entry.

Activating Temporarily with Motion Control

- 1 **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **Shake handset left or right** ➔
 - Show Secret Data is canceled when handset is closed or Display goes dark in Standby.



Using Function Control

Restrict access to the following functions remotely. (Available for administrators.)

Camera	Infrared
Bluetooth	Memory Card
USB	Digital TV
Messaging	S! Mail
PC Mail	Attach File
Voice Call (placing)	Video Call (placing)
USIM (writing)	Flash®
Yahoo! Keitai	PC Site Browser
Streaming	IP Service
S! Appli	Osaifu-Keitai
Mobile Widget	

- A message appears while Function Control is in progress.
- May be unavailable depending on subscription. For details, contact the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-41).

■ When Accessing Restricted Functions

A message (example shown below) appears; the function is inaccessible.

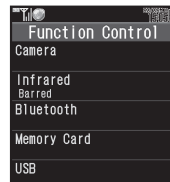


Message may not appear for some functions.

Checking Restriction Status

1 ● ➡ **Settings** ➡ ● ➡ In Phone menu, **Locks** ➡ ●

2 **Function Control** ➡ ●



- Restriction status appears for each function.



PIN Entry

Changing PIN

- ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, *Locks*
- ➔ ● ➔ *PIN Entry* ➔ ● ➔ *Change PIN* ➔ ●
- ➔ Enter current PIN ➔ ● ➔ Enter new PIN ➔
- ➔ Re-enter new PIN ➔ ●
- Activate PIN Entry first.

Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock activation message to appear

- Start Here ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, *Locks* ➔ ● ➔ *Set Lock Message* ➔ ● ➔ See below
- Saving Message*
- Message* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔
- Enter message ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●
- Checking Message*
- Check Message* ➔ ●



Data Folder	12-2
Opening Files	12-3
Managing Files & Folders	12-4

Memory Card.....	12-5
Using Memory Card	12-5
Additional Functions.....	12-8
Troubleshooting.....	12-10

12

Data Folder & Memory Card



Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ Preset Folders

	Contents
Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to DCIM)
Ring Songs·Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications
Widget*	Widgets
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli*	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen*	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Decoration Calli*	Decoration Call files created on handset or obtained via mail
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Checking Memory Status

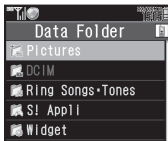
● ➔ **Data Folder** ➔ ● ➔ **Memory Status** ➔ ● ➔ **Phone Memory or Memory Card** ➔ ●

- The category **Others**: includes Data Folder management files, Saved Pages, etc.
- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.



Opening Files

1 ➔ Data Folder ➔



- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press .

2 ➔

To open a sub folder, select it and press .



File List

3 ➔



- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press .

Handling Open Images

- Press to enlarge, or press or to open next/previous ones. Press to rotate 90 degrees clockwise.

Attaching to Mail

After , select file ➔ ➔ *Send/ Blog* ➔ ➔ *As Message* ➔

- If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

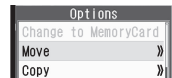
Copy Protected Files (or)

- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 ➔



2 *Slide Show* ➔

- Slide Show starts.

3 ➔ Slide Show stops

Changing Interval

After , ➔ *Speed* ➔ ➔ *Select speed* ➔

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press or to advance or reverse frame.

Note

- Backlight stays on during Slide Show; exit to save battery power.

Advanced

- Switching file list view
- Changing image quality
- Changing Slide Show settings
- Using files as Wallpaper
- Using files as ringtones
- Using files as ringvideos (And more on P.12-8 - 12-9)

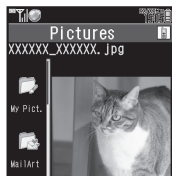


Managing Files & Folders

Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

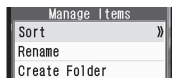
- 1 **Data Folder** **Select folder**



File List

- 2 If **Download** is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to 4.

- 3 **Manage Items**



- 4 **Create Folder** **Enter name**

Moving/Copying Files

Some files may not be moved/copied.

- 1 In file list, select file
- 2 **Move or Copy** **Phone or Memory Card**
 - For still images, select **Pictures** or **Mail Art** and press .

- 3 Select folder
- 4 **Move here or Copy here**

Selecting Multiple Files

- 1 In file list,
- 2 Select file
 - Repeat 2 as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with and press .)

Hiding Folders

Restrict access to created folders.
Only handset folders can be hidden.

- 1 In file list, select folder
- 2 **Set Secret** **Enter Handset Code**

Accessing Secret Folders (Unlock Temporarily)

[File List] **Unlock Temporarily** **Enter Handset Code**

Canceling Secret

Unlock Secret folders temporarily and select Secret folder **Unset Secret** **Enter Handset Code**

Advanced

- Renaming folders ● Opening file properties ● Renaming files ● Sorting files ● Deleting files & created folders ● Handling SVG files (P.12-9)



Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 935SH. Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.15-23** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

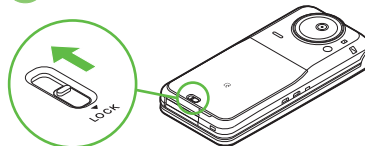
Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Keep Memory Cards out of infant's reach; may cause suffocation if swallowed.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

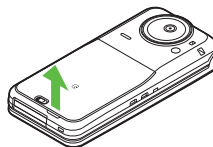
Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off first.

1 Unlock Battery Cover

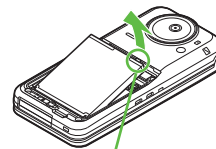


2 Remove cover



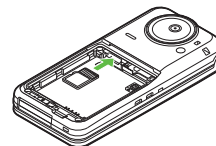
- Lift as shown.

3 Remove battery



- Take hold of Battery Tab here and lift as shown.

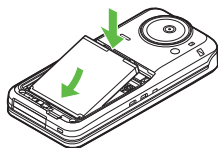
4 Insert card



- With terminal side up, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

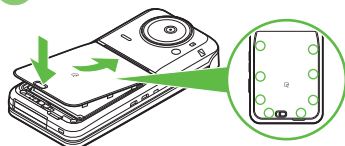


5 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

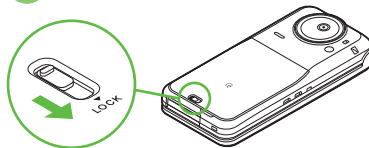
6 Close cover



Press firmly
along edges

- Fit cover top into slot, then press down firmly.

7 Lock cover



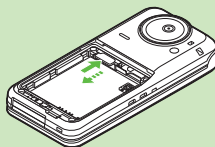
- Slide switch as shown until it clicks.
- Close cover firmly. Water may seep inside handset when there is debris between cover and base.

If Appears after Power On

- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

Removing Memory Card

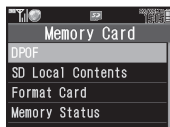
- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



Format Card

When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

- 1 **Settings** **Connectivity** **Memory Card**



- 2 **Format Card** **Yes**

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

- 3 **Enter Handset Code**



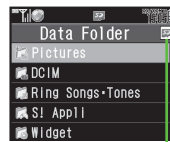
- 4 **Yes**
 - To cancel, choose **No** and press .

Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

- 1 **Data Folder**
- 2 **Change to MemoryCard**



appears

- Memory Card Data Folder opens.

- 3 **Select folder**
 - To open a sub folder, select it and press .

- 4 **Select file**

Advanced

- Using HTML files on Memory Card (P.12-9)



File/Folder View Settings

Switching file list view	<p>● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ⊞</p> <p>➔ Manage Items ➔ ● ➔ Change List View ➔</p> <p>● ➔ Select option ➔ ●</p>
Changing image quality	<p>● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select file ➔ ● ➔ ⊞ ➔ Switch Display</p> <p>(Picture Quality for Flash® files) ➔ ● ➔ Select quality ➔ ●</p>
Changing transition effect for sequential image viewing	<p>● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select file ➔ ● ➔ ⊞ ➔ Switch Effect ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select effect ➔ ●</p>
Changing Slide Show settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔</p> <p>● ➔ Select file ➔ ⊞ ➔ Slide Show ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>➔ ⊞ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Playing Once</p> <p>Repeat ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Playing Music</p> <p>BGM Settings ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>On ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Changing Music</p> <p>BGM Settings ➔ ● ➔ Play Ring Tones ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select file ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Changing Key Illumination Pattern</p> <p>Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select pattern ➔ ● ➔ ⊞</p>
	<p>Disabling Key Illumination</p> <p>Illumination ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Off ➔ ● ➔ ⊞</p>

Changing Slide Show settings	<p>Start Here ● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔</p> <p>● ➔ Select file ➔ ⊞ ➔ Slide Show ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>➔ ⊞ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Showing Softkeys</p> <p>SW Guide Display ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Setting Backlight to Turn Off after a Period of Time</p> <p>Always Backlight ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Choosing Off applies Display Backlight settings. (Display remains on during Slide Show regardless of Display Saving setting.)
Showing Softkeys in image view	<p>Changing Image Transition Effect</p> <p>Switch Effect ➔ ● ➔ Select effect ➔ ●</p>
	<p>● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select file ➔ ● ➔ ⊞ ➔ SW Guide Display</p> <p>● ➔ On ➔ ●</p>

Using Files/Folders

Using files as Wallpaper	<p>● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select file ➔ ⊞ ➔ Set as Wallpaper ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●.
Using files as ringtones	<p>● ➔ Data Folder ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔</p> <p>Select file ➔ ⊞ ➔ Set as Ringtone ➔ ● ➔ ➔</p> <p>Select item ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If prompted, enter ring time and press ●. If a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.



Using files as ringvideos	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Videos ➤ ● ➤</p> <p>Select file ➤ ☰ ➤ Set as Ring Video ➤ ● ➤</p> <p>Select item ➤ ●</p> <p>● If prompted, enter ring time and press ●.</p>
Saving Phone Book entries	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ●</p> <p>➤ Select file ➤ ☰ ➤ Save to Phone Book ➤</p> <p>● ➤ As New Entry ➤ ● ➤ Complete other fields ➤ ▾</p> <p>● To add to an existing entry, select As New Detail.</p>
Activating mobile camera, etc. in corresponding folders	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ●</p> <p>➤ ☰ ➤ Take Picture, Record Video or Record Voice ➤ ●</p>

Managing Files/Folders

Renaming folders	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ●</p> <p>➤ Select folder ➤ ☰ ➤ Manage Items ➤ ● ➤</p> <p>Rename ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ●</p> <p>● Assign different names to folders within a layer.</p>
Opening file properties	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ●</p> <p>➤ Select file ➤ ☰ ➤ Details ➤ ●</p>
Renaming files	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ●</p> <p>➤ Select file ➤ ☰ ➤ Manage Items ➤ ● ➤</p> <p>Rename ➤ ● ➤ Enter name ➤ ●</p>
Sorting files	<p>● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ●</p> <p>➤ ☰ ➤ Manage Items ➤ ● ➤ Sort ➤ ● ➤</p> <p>Select method ➤ ●</p>

Deleting files & created folders	<p>Start Here ● ➤ Data Folder ➤ ● ➤ Select folder ➤ ● ➤ See below</p> <p>Single Files</p> <p>Select file ➤ ☰ ➤ Delete ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p> <p>Folder & Files Within</p> <p>Select folder ➤ ☰ ➤ Delete ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>
Handling SVG files	<p>Line Scroll</p> <p>⌂</p> <p>Page Scroll</p> <p>2 (Up), 8 (Down), 6 (Right), 4 (Left)</p> <p>Zoom</p> <p>1 (Zoom out), 3 (Zoom in)</p> <p>Rotate</p> <p>7 (Counterclockwise), 9 (Clockwise)</p> <p>Key Action Mode</p> <p>0</p> <p>Default View</p> <p>5</p>

Memory Card

Using HTML files on Memory Card	<p>● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ Connectivity ➤</p> <p>Memory Card ➤ ● ➤ SD Local Contents ➤</p> <p>● ➤ Select title ➤ ●</p>
---------------------------------	--



Managing Files/Folders



Cannot copy files

- Files may be copy/forward protected. (If a copy/forward protected file is included in selected files, only the remaining files are copied.)



Copied/moved files cannot be used on PCs, etc.

- Some files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.



Cannot sort files properly

- Check the number of files/folders in the folder. Files/folders in folders containing 241 or more files/folders are sorted per 240 files/folders in the order they were saved. The order may change when a file/folder is deleted, etc.



Cannot use some characters in file/folder names

- Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ., <, >, /, ?, # and " are not supported.



Infrared.....	13-2
Transferring Files via Infrared	13-3
IC Transmission	13-5
Transferring Files via IC Transmission	13-6
Bluetooth®	13-7
Transferring Files via Bluetooth®	13-8
External Device Connection	13-11
Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder	13-11

Backup.....	13-12
Basics.....	13-12
Backup & Restore	13-13
S! Addressbook Back-up (SAB) ...	13-14
About SAB.....	13-14
Backup & Restore	13-16
Additional Functions.....	13-17
Troubleshooting.....	13-20

13

Connectivity & File Backup



Infrared

Wirelessly transfer files between 935SH and compatible devices.

935SH supports IrSimple™ high-speed wireless communications protocol; exchange large image files instantly with compatible mobile phones, printers, etc.

Transferable Files

Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Notepad	Templates (Messaging)
Bookmarks	Data Folder

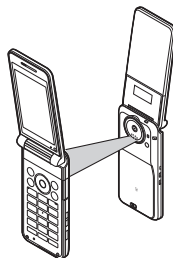
- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.

- Handset cannot receive connection requests during Software Update.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Eyesight may be affected.
- 935SH complies with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not transfer properly.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
IrSS Transfer	Exchange single image files with compatible devices at high speed

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for Infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)



Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

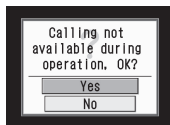
1 (Long)



Infrared appears

- Infrared is activated. (Alternatively, activate it via Main Menu.)
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel Infrared, Long Press

2 Connection request arrives



Request Window

3 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press

Subsequent Operations

■ One File Transfer

Yes ➔ ➔ Yes ➔

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press

■ All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

➔ Enter Authorization Code ➔

➔ *As New Items* ➔

■ All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes ➔ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔

➔ Enter Authorization Code ➔

➔ *Delete All & Save* ➔ ➔ Yes

➔

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

■ IrSS Transfer

Yes ➔

- Files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

Advanced

- Activating Infrared via Main Menu ● Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size (P.13-17)

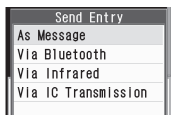


Sending Files

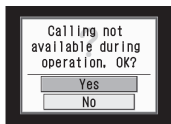
One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

- 1 ➔ **Select entry** ➔ ➔ **Send Entry** ➔



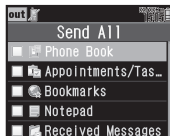
- 2 **Via Infrared** ➔



- 3 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Transfer starts**
 - When complete, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Infrared** ➔
- 2 **Send All** ➔
- 3 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔



- 4 **Select item** ➔ (/) ➔ **Complete selection** ➔
- 5 **Enter Authorization Code** ➔ ➔ **Transfer starts** ➔

Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:
Yes or No ➔

Sending JPEG Images at High Speed

- 1 ➔ **Data Folder** ➔
- 2 **Pictures or DCIM** ➔
 - For **DCIM**, select a folder and press .
- 3 **Select image** ➔ (Long)



- 4 **Yes or No** ➔ ➔ **Transfer starts**

- Images may be reduced automatically before transfer depending on the size.
- When complete, file list returns.
- Transfers are one-way; end even if files are not received.

Advanced

- Sending My Details Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-17)



IC Transmission

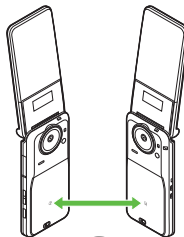
Wirelessly transfer files between 935SH and compatible devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- Cancel IC Card Lock beforehand.
- Disconnect Headphones, USB Cable and AC Charger beforehand.

Getting Started

IC Transmission Precautions

Align  logos of both devices.



Align  logos

Keep  logos aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options



One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

- Four-digit code required for IC transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Advanced

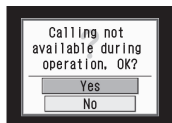
-   Disabling one file reception (**P.13-17**)



Transferring Files via IC Transmission

Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.


2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .





Subsequent Operations

One File Transfer






Yes →  → Yes → 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes →  → Enter Handset Code → 
 → Enter Authorization Code → 
 → As New Items → 

All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

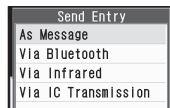
Yes →  → Enter Handset Code → 
 → Enter Authorization Code → 
 Delete All & Save →  → Yes → 
 • For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending Files

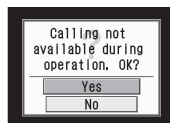
One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  → Select entry →  →
 Send Entry → 



2 Via IC Transmission → 



3 Yes →  → Transfer starts

All File Transfer

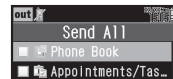
1  → Settings →  →
 Connectivity → IC
 Transmission → 



IC Transmission Menu

2 Send All → 



3 Yes →  → Enter Handset
 Code → 



4 Select item →  (□/☑) →
 Complete selection → 

5 Enter Authorization Code →
 → Transfer starts → 

Sending Phone Book

- In , Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:
 Yes or No → 

Advanced

-  Sending My Details
-  Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-17)



Bluetooth®

Wirelessly transfer files/data between 935SH and compatible devices (watches, handsfree devices, etc.).

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- 935SH supports simultaneous connection with two devices. (May be unavailable depending on the device type.)
- Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.
 - Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
 - Data transfers may fail depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices.
 - Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations.
- TV audio is supported only on SCMS-T DRM scheme compliant Bluetooth® devices.

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Precautions

Check transmission range of your Bluetooth® device to use with handset properly. Maximum transmission range for transfers between 935SH handsets is ten meters. (Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate may vary depending on conditions.)

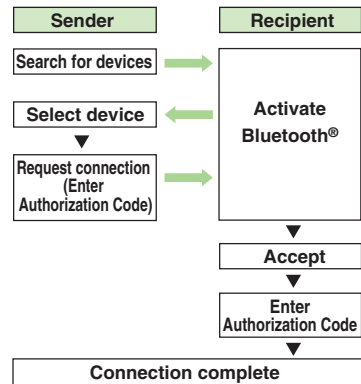
Handsfree Device Precaution

- Handle call operations on the device in use.

Bluetooth® Watches

- Compatible Bluetooth® watches support these functions:
 - Time Correction
 - News Notice
 - Remote Shutter
 - Quick Silent
 - Hold Calls
 - Alarm Notice
 - Mail Notice
 - Mode Settings
 - Caller ID Notice
 - Operator Notice
- For details about functions/operations, see the Bluetooth® watch guide.

Bluetooth® Connection



Authorization Code

- 4 to 16-digit code required for Bluetooth® connections. Pairing possible when codes match.
- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorization Code.

Advanced

- 👉 ● Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests ● Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled ● Switching audio output to wireless device
- Changing Bluetooth® name for handset ● Talking on handsfree device ● Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc. ● Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties (**P.13-17**)
- Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset ● Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses (**P.13-18**)

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Activating Bluetooth®

1 (Long)



appears

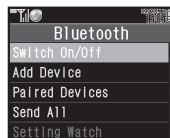
- Bluetooth® is activated.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from unpaired handsfree devices, etc.
- To cancel Bluetooth®, Long Press

Connecting Bluetooth® Devices

Device Search & Pairing

Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

1 ➔ Settings ➔ ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔



Bluetooth Menu

2 Add Device ➔



- To disable confirmation, press before .

3

- Found devices are listed after search.
- Press to cancel.

4 Select device ➔

If a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press .

5 Enter the same Authorization Code for handset and the other device ➔ ➔ Pairing complete

- On the other device, complete code entry within 30 seconds.
- Authorization Codes are not necessary for paired devices.

Advanced

- Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu
- Editing Paired Device list
- Disconnecting devices
- Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service
- Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection (P.13-17 - 13-18)



Connecting Paired Devices

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Paired Devices* ➡ ●



Paired Device List

2 Select device ➡ ●

If handset is already connected to another device, disconnection confirmation may appear; choose **Yes** and press ●.

- The device is connected and ☒ (preferred) appears.

Accepting Connection Requests

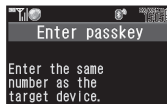
Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices:

1 Connection request arrives



Request Window

2 Yes ➡ ●



3 Enter the same Authorization Code as sender's ➡ ●

- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.



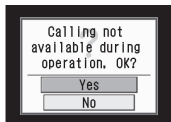
Transferring Files

Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- For transferable files, see **P.13-2**.
- When requested, enter Authorization Code.

Receiving Files

1 Connection request arrives




2 Perform subsequent operations

- To cancel transfer, press .

Subsequent Operations

One File Transfer

Yes ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 

- If storage media confirmation appears, select media and press .

All File Transfer (Adding Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code

➔  ➔ *As New Items* ➔ 

All File Transfer (Overwriting Existing Files)

Yes ➔  ➔ Enter Handset Code

➔  ➔ *Delete All & Save* ➔  ➔

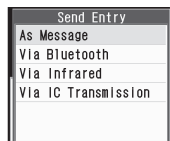
Yes ➔ 

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1  ➔ Select entry ➔  ➔ *Send Entry* ➔ 




2 *Via Bluetooth* ➔ 

3 Select device ➔ 

4 Yes ➔  ➔ Transfer starts

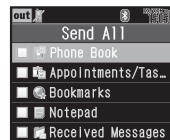
- When complete, entry search window returns.

All File Transfer

1 In Bluetooth menu, *Send All* ➔ 


2 Select device ➔  ➔ Yes ➔ 

3 Enter Handset Code ➔ 



4 Select item ➔  (/✓) ➔ Complete selection ➔  ➔ Transfer starts ➔ 

Sending Phone Book

- In 4, Picture transfer confirmation appears; follow these steps:
Yes or No ➔ 

Advanced

-  ● Sending My Details ● Sending non-Phone Book files (P.13-18)



Connecting PC or Blu-ray Disc Recorder

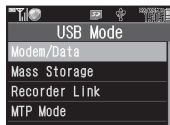
Connecting PC

Accessing Memory Card

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing card from handset. USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable

2 Mass Storage ➡ ●



- Use PC to access Memory Card.

3 ☺ ➡ Yes ➡ ● ➡

Connection ends

- Disconnect USB Cable.

If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
 ● ➡ **Settings** ➡ ● ➡ ☺ **Connectivity**
 ➡ **USB Mode** ➡ ● ➡ From 2
 ■ Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.

Utility Software (Japanese)

For more PC-related operations, download Utility Software (including USB Cable driver) from the following URL.

• Utility Software

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/download/tools/utility/>

Mobile Data Communication Fees

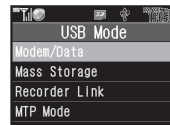
- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA via USB Cable or Bluetooth® may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time.

Connecting Blu-ray Disc Recorder

Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable to transfer recorded programs to Memory Card without removing card from handset.

- Compatible only with SHARP Blu-ray Disc recorders. For details, see **P.15-23** "Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders."
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

1 Connect handset to a Blu-ray Disc recorder via USB Cable



2 Recorder Link ➡ ●

- Transfer files from Blu-ray Disc recorder to Memory Card.

3 ☺ ➡ Yes ➡ ● ➡

Connection ends

- Open transferred files via Recorder Contents in TV menu or Media Player menu (Videos).

If Menu in 1 Does Not Appear

- Follow these steps:
 ● ➡ **Settings** ➡ ● ➡ ☺ **Connectivity**
 ➡ **USB Mode** ➡ ● ➡ From 2
 ■ Operations on the PC may be required; if prompted, follow onscreen instructions.



Basics

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.

Supported Items

Select items to back up, or transfer all at once. Items with * are selectable at once via **Check Selection** in Options menu.

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates (Messaging)
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	Received Msg.*
Mail Groups*	Sent Messages*
User Dictionary	

Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly. For details, see "Troubleshooting" at the end of this chapter.

Transferring All Items

- Use blank Memory Card for **Backup All Items**. Do not use the card to save other files after **Backup All Items**; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Contents Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.



Backup & Restore

Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

- 1 ➔ **Settings** ➔ ➔ ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Backup/Restore** ➔



Backup/Restore Menu

- 2 **Backup Selected Items** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔
- 3 **Yes** ➔
- 4 **Select item** ➔ (☐ / ☒) ➔ **Complete selection**
 - For **Phone Book**, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press .

- 5 ➔ **Yes** ➔
 - To cancel, press .

- 6 **Backup complete** ➔ ➔

Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 4, ➔ **Select option** ➔ ➔

From 5

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 4, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All** ➔

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items: (Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current--with the exception of Contents Keys--handset content.)

- 1 In Backup/Restore menu, **Restore Selected Items** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔
- 2 **Yes** ➔
- 3 **Select item** ➔ (☐ / ☒) ➔ **Complete selection**

- 4
 - If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

- 5 **Select file** ➔
 - Repeat 5 to complete selection.

- 6

- 7 **Yes** ➔
 - To cancel, press .

- 8 **Restore complete** ➔ ➔

Selecting Multiple Items at Once

In 3, ➔ **Select option** ➔ ➔

From 4

Selecting/Canceling All Items

In 3, ➔ **Check All or Uncheck All** ➔

Changing Restoration Method

After 3, select item ➔ ➔ **Change to Add Mode or Chg. to Overwrite Mode** ➔ ➔ From 4

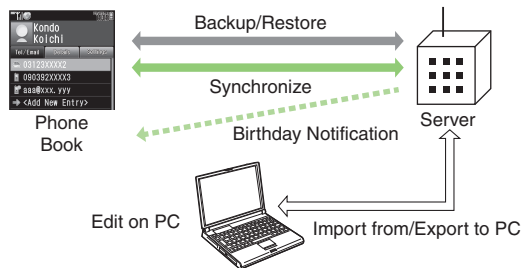
Advanced

- Backing up all items Encoding data for backup Restoring all items Deleting backup files (P.13-19)



About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.13-15).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SoftBank Mobile Website (P.15-23).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

Auto Synchronization

- When subscribed to SAB, Network Information retrieval activates auto synchronization (Set Auto Sync: **On**, Set Frequency: **After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)**, Set Sync Mode: **Synchronize**); Phone Book changes are added to SAB automatically.
- Cancel auto synchronization as needed. However, it reactivates after Network Information retrieval.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB ¹
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book ²
Synchronize	Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB ³
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB ⁴
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁵
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice ⁶	Birthday Notification	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification ⁷	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification ⁸	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	Tomodachi Email Filter ⁹	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

¹ Any existing SAB content is deleted.

² Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

³ If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

⁴ Unrelated SAB changes remain.

⁵ Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

⁶ Access this function via handset or a PC.

⁷ Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.

⁸ Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.

⁹ Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.



Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese) via Yahoo! Keitai.



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, user ID and password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and password are required to use SAB via a PC.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

■ Unsynchronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration

■ Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

■ Phone Book ⇄ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

■ Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

■ SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
- **Other 3G Handsets**
SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

■ When Double Number is Active

Regardless of usage mode setting, all Phone Book content is backed up.

Advanced

- Canceling auto synchronization (P.13-19)

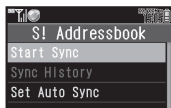


Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

- 1 ➔ **Phone** ➔ ➔ **S! Addressbook Backup** ➔



S! Addressbook Menu

- 2 **Start Sync** ➔ ➔ **Backup** ➔

- 3 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- Backup starts; when complete, details appear.

- 4 ➔ **Backup complete**

Canceling Backup

➔ **Yes** ➔

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** ➔ ➔ **Restore** ➔

- 2 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- Restore starts; when complete, details appear.

- 3 ➔ **Restore complete**

Canceling Restore

➔ **Yes** ➔

Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB
Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

- 1 In S! Addressbook menu, **Start Sync** ➔ ➔ **Select option** ➔

- 2 **Yes** ➔ ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔

- Synchronization starts; when complete, details appear.

- 3 ➔ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization

➔ **Yes** ➔

Advanced

- Changing auto synchronization settings Confirming password Opening log (P.13-19)



Infrared	
Activating Infrared via Main Menu	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Infrared → → Switch On/Off → → On(3 min.)
Sending My Details	→ Send My Card → → Via Infrared → → Yes → → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file → → Send (or Send/Blog) → → Via Infrared → → Yes → → Transfer starts
Sending images via IrSS Transfer without reducing size	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Infrared → → IrSS Key Setting → → Send via IrSS

IC Transmission	
Disabling one file reception	→ Settings → → Connectivity → IC Transmission → → 1 File Reception → → Off(Disabled)
Sending My Details	→ Send My Card → → Via IC Transmission → → Yes → → Transfer starts
Sending non-Phone Book files	In file list, select file → → Send (or Send/Blog) → → Via IC Transmission → → Yes → → Transfer starts

Bluetooth®	
General	
Cloaking handset to avoid connection requests	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Settings → → Visibility → → Hide My Phone
Setting idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Settings → Bluetooth Timeout → → Select time
Switching audio output to wireless device	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Settings → → Sound Output → → Bluetooth Device <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bluetooth Device is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.
Changing Bluetooth® name for handset	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Settings → Device Name → → Enter name
Talking on handsfree device	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Settings → Handsfree Setting → → Handsfree Mode
Avoiding connection requests from Bluetooth®-compatible S! Applications in Standby, etc.	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Settings → S! Appli Request → → Off
Opening Bluetooth®-related handset properties	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → My Device Details <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press to view service details.
Activating Bluetooth® via Main Menu	→ Settings → → Connectivity → Bluetooth → → Switch On/Off → → On



■ Bluetooth® Watches

Synchronizing Bluetooth® watch with handset	<p>● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Setting Watch ➔ ● ➔ Set BT-Watch Time ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect handset to a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.
Enabling/disabling Bluetooth® watch responses	<p>● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Setting Watch ➔ ● ➔ Notification ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Permit or Prohibit ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Register a Bluetooth® watch beforehand.

■ Paired Devices

Editing Paired Device list	<p>[Start Here] ● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Paired Devices ➔ ● ➔ Select device ➔ ☰ ➔ See below</p>
	<p>Renaming Paired Devices</p> <p>Change Name ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●</p>
	<p>Deleting Paired Devices</p> <p>Delete ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To delete a device connected to handset, choose Yes and press ●.
Disconnecting devices	<p>● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Paired Devices ➔ ● ➔ Select connected device ➔ ●</p>
Connecting devices supporting handsfree telephony and audio output by service	<p>● ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ Connectivity ➔ Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Paired Devices ➔ ● ➔ Select device ➔ ☰ ➔ Select Service ➔ ● ➔ Handsfree function or Audio function ➔ ●</p>

Specifying a preferred device for wireless connection

[Start Here] ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Connectivity** ➔ **Bluetooth** ➔ ● ➔ **Paired Devices** ➔ ● ➔ **Select device** ➔ ☰ ➔ **Set to Prior Connect** ➔ ● ➔ **See below**


For Handsfree Telephony

Handsfree On ➔ ●

- For **Handsfree On**, specified device reconnects to handset when placing/receiving calls.

For Audio Output

Audio On ➔ ●

- For **Audio On**, Media Player/TV audio output is redirected to specified device automatically when  Sound Output is set to **Bluetooth Device**.

■ Sending Files

Sending My Details	<p>● ➔ 0123 ➔ ☰ ➔ Send My Card ➔ ● ➔ Via Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Select device ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ Transfer starts</p>
Sending non-Phone Book files	<p>In file list, select file ➔ ☰ ➔ Send (or Send/Blog) ➔ ● ➔ Via Bluetooth ➔ ● ➔ Select device ➔ ● ➔ Yes ➔ ● ➔ Transfer starts</p>



Backup

Backup & Restore

Backing up all items	<p>● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ ☺ Connectivity ➤ Backup/Restore ➤ ● ➤ Backup All Items ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ Backup complete ➤ ● ➤ ●</p>
Encoding data for backup	<p>● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ ☺ Connectivity ➤ Backup/Restore ➤ ● ➤ Settings/Manage ➤ ● ➤ Encode Settings ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ● ➤ On ➤ ●</p> <p>• Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.</p>
Restoring all items	<p>● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ ☺ Connectivity ➤ Backup/Restore ➤ ● ➤ Restore All Items ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ Yes ➤ ● ➤ Restore complete ➤ ● ➤ ●</p>

Backup Files

Deleting backup files	<p>● ➤ Settings ➤ ● ➤ ☺ Connectivity ➤ Backup/Restore ➤ ● ➤ Settings/Manage ➤ ● ➤ File Management ➤ ● ➤ Select item ➤ ● ➤ Select file ➤ ● (□/☑) ➤ Complete selection ➤ ▾ ➤ Yes ➤ ●</p>
-----------------------	--

S! Addressbook Back-up

Canceling auto synchronization	<p>● ➤ Phone ➤ ● ➤ S! Addressbook Backup ➤ ● ➤ Set Auto Sync ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ Set On/Off ➤ ● ➤ Off ➤ ●</p>
Changing auto synchronization settings	<p>Start Here ● ➤ Phone ➤ ● ➤ S! Addressbook Backup ➤ ● ➤ Set Auto Sync ➤ ● ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ ● ➤ See below</p> <p>• Set Set On/Off to On beforehand.</p> <p>Changing Auto Sync Frequency</p> <p>Set Frequency ➤ ● ➤ Select frequency ➤ ● ➤ Enter/select date/time/day of the week ➤ ●</p> <p>• For After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.), omit steps for date, time, etc.</p> <p>Changing Auto Sync Command</p> <p>Set Sync Mode ➤ ● ➤ Select command ➤ ●</p>
Confirming password	<p>▽ ➤ メニューリスト ➤ ● ➤ My SoftBank ➤ ● ➤ English ➤ ● ➤ Password confirmation for S! Address Book ➤ ● ➤ Follow onscreen instructions</p>
Opening log	<p>● ➤ Phone ➤ ● ➤ S! Addressbook Backup ➤ ● ➤ Sync History ➤ ● ➤ Select record ➤ ●</p>



File Transfer



Some files are not received

- If storage limit is reached during transfers, remaining files will not be received.



Cannot receive/accept connection requests even when Infrared/Bluetooth® is On

- Handset may not be in Standby.
- Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.
- Software Update may be in progress.



Phone Book settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Category, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration, Secret
- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.



Calendar/Tasks settings are lost

- One file transfer resets these settings:
 - Alarm Tone/Video, Secret, S! Friend's Status



Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.



Messages are not saved properly on handset

- Messages may not be received depending on the size.
- Messages received via One File Transfer are saved to Other Documents folder and cannot be used as messages.
- Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail when transferred from other SoftBank handsets via All File Transfer.
- In All File Transfers, overwriting messaging folders deletes sort keys.



Messages are not saved properly on recipient devices

- Mail Notices are saved as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- When sending messages to other handset models via All File Transfer, Spam Folder messages may be saved to the incoming message folder.
- When sending messages in Drafts to other handset models via All File Transfer, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.



Cannot find files in DCIM folder

- Received files in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

Infrared



Infrared transfer fails

- Infrared Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.; clean with a soft cloth.
- Transfers may fail in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment.



Backup & Restore

? Backup fails

- Check handset/Memory Card memory; backup may fail if the memory is low.

? Some files are not restored

- If storage limit is reached during Restore, remaining files will not be restored.

? Cannot use backup files on other SoftBank handsets or PCs

- Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

? Cannot open backup files

- Some backup files may open only after being restored to handset.

? Phone Book settings are lost

- Picture setting may be lost depending on image; send the image separately and reassign it.

? Messages are not saved properly

- Transfer may delete sort keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

? Bookmarks are not saved properly

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up as a single file.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

■ Exporting Backed Up Data to Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- When restoring draft messages, only the first entered recipient may remain or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

■ Importing Data Backed Up on Other SoftBank Handsets

? Messages are not saved properly

- Messages may not be restored depending on the size.
- Sky Mail may be restored as S! Mail.



Date & Time	14-2
Date & Time	14-2
Display & Illumination	14-3
Language	14-3
Image & Text	14-3
Display & Backlight	14-3
Standby Display	14-4
Key Backlight	14-4
Incoming Transmissions	14-5
Handset Response	14-5

Sounds	14-6
System Sounds	14-6
Additional Sound Settings	14-6
Connectivity	14-7
Network	14-7
IP Service	14-8
Location Information	14-8
Reset	14-9
Restoring Default Settings	14-9

14

Handset Customization



Date & Time Settings

Date & Time

[Start Here](#) ➔ Settings ➔ In Phone menu, *Date & Time*

Setting the date and time	<i>Set Date/Time</i> ➔ Enter the year ➔ Enter the month ➔ Enter the day ➔ Enter the time
Correcting Clock manually	<i>Time Correction</i> ➔ <i>Manual</i> ➔ Yes ➔ Yes
Disabling auto Clock correction	<i>Time Correction</i> ➔ <i>Auto Corr. Setting</i> ➔ Off
Setting auto Clock correction timing	<i>Time Correction</i> ➔ <i>Auto Corr. Setting</i> ➔ On ➔ Select item ➔ (☐/☑) ➔ ⌚ ➔ ⌚
Activating Daylight Saving	<i>Daylight Saving</i> ➔ On
Changing Time Zone	<i>Set Time Zone</i> ➔ Select area
Adding custom time zone	<i>Set Time Zone</i> ➔ Enter city name ➔ ⌚ + or - ➔ Enter time difference
Changing time format to 12 hour	<i>Time Format</i> ➔ 12 Hour
Changing date format	<i>Date Format</i> ➔ Select option
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	<i>Calendar Format</i> ➔ Monday-Sunday



Display & Illumination Settings 1

Language

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ Phone menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English

Language or 言語選択 ➔ ● ➔ **English or 日本語** ➔ ●

Image & Text

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Preset Animation (or Pattern 1 to Pattern 3)** ➔ ●

Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Select folder** ➔ ● ➔ **Select image** ➔ ● ➔ **Specify image area** ➔ ●
 ● Some images may be usable without specifying image area.

Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.

System Graphics ➔ ● ➔ **Select item** ➔ ● ➔ **Customized Screen** ➔ ● ➔ ●
 ● Not available for **Power On** or **Power Off**.

Selecting image enhancement option for Standby and video playback

Vivid Mode ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Changing font of numbers entered in Standby

Dial Number ➔ ● ➔ **Select pattern** ➔ ●

Showing a message each time handset is turned on

Greeting Message ➔ ● ➔ **Edit Message** ➔ ● ➔ **Enter message** ➔ ● ➔ **Switch On/Off** ➔ ● ➔ **On** ➔ ●

Display & Backlight

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, **Display** ➔ ●

Disabling display transition effects

Display Effects ➔ ● ➔ **Off** ➔ ●

Changing Display/key Backlight illumination time

Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Time Out** ➔ ● ➔ **Select time** ➔ ●

Changing Display Brightness

Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔ **Adjust level** ➔ ●

Canceling/activating Light Sensor

Backlight ➔ ● ➔ **Brightness** ➔ ● ➔  (□/✓) ➔ ●

Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off

Display Saving ➔ ● ➔ **Select period** ➔ ●



Display & Illumination Settings **2**

Standby Display

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, **Display** ➔ ● ➔ **Standby Display** ➔ ●

Changing Clock/Calendar	Clock/Calendar ➔ ● ➔ Select type ➔ ●
Showing Network service provider name in Standby	Show Operator Name ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ●
Hiding Pedometer in Standby	Pedometer ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●

Key Backlight

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ **Phone menu**










Disabling key Backlight illumination	Set Key Light ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●
Changing Key Illumination pattern by event	Sounds & Alerts ➔ ● ➔ Set Key Illumi ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ●
Disabling Key Illumination by event	Sounds & Alerts ➔ ● ➔ Set Key Illumi ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ Off ➔ ●



Y Incoming Transmission Settings

Handset Response

[Start Here](#) ● ➔ **Settings** ➔ ● ➔ In Phone menu, **Sounds & Alerts** ➔ ●

Changing ringtone volume	Volume ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Setting illumination color	Event Light ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Light Color ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ●
Changing Key Illumination patterns	Event Light ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Key Pattern ➔ ● ➔ Select pattern ➔ ●
Selecting illumination option	Event Light ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On, Link to Sound or Off ➔ ● • For Link to Sound , press ● again.
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed transmissions	Status Light ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Switch On/Off ➔ ● ➔ On or Off ➔ ●
Setting illumination color for missed transmissions	Status Light ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ Light Color ➔ ● ➔ Select color ➔ ●
Answering calls with other keys	Any Key Answer ➔ ● ➔ On ➔ ● • Use 0  , 9  , X  , #  , 静音  ,  ,  or  in addition to  .



Sound Settings

System Sounds

[Start Here](#) → Settings → In Phone menu, **Sounds & Alerts**

Enabling Keypad Tones	System Sounds → Keypad Tones → Select tone
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	System Sounds → S! Circle Talk → Select tone
Changing other System Sounds	System Sounds → Select item → Tone or Sound → Select folder → Select tone/file • For files with limited usage period, choose Yes and press .
Disabling System Sounds	System Sounds → Select item → Tone or Sound → Off • Not available for S! Circle Talk .
Changing System Sound duration	System Sounds → Select item → Duration → Select/enter time • Not available for Keypad Tones or S! Circle Talk .
Changing System Sound volume	Volume → General Volume → Adjust level

Additional Sound Settings

[Start Here](#) → Settings → Phone menu



Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	Ringer Output → Earphone
Activating Speaker surround	Sounds & Alerts → Surround → On



Connectivity Settings 1

Network

[Start Here](#) ➔ Settings ➔ Network

Selecting a Network manually	Select Network ➔ Manual ➔ Select Network ➔
Adding preferred Networks	Select Network ➔ Set Preferred ➔ Select target location ➔ Insert ➔ Select Network ➔
Adding preferred Networks to the end	Select Network ➔ Set Preferred ➔ Add to End ➔ Select Network ➔
Deleting preferred Networks	Select Network ➔ Set Preferred ➔ Select Network ➔ Delete ➔
Adding Networks	Select Network ➔ Add New Network ➔ Add ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter Network code ➔ Enter name ➔ Select NW Type ➔ Select type ➔ • After selecting Add New Network and pressing  , Network list appears if Network has already been added. To add more, press  again and proceed.
Editing Networks	Select Network ➔ Add New Network ➔ Select Network ➔ Change ➔ Edit in the same manner as adding Networks ➔
Deleting Networks	Select Network ➔ Add New Network ➔ Select Network ➔ Delete ➔
Switching Network services manually	Select Service ➔ Manual ➔ Select service ➔
Retrieving Network Information	Retrieve NW Info ➔ Yes ➔
Checking Network status	Network Info ➔
Editing access point names for external devices	External Device ➔ Select name ➔ Edit ➔
Clearing access point names for external devices	External Device ➔ Reset ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Yes ➔



######

Reset Settings

Restoring Default Settings

[Start Here](#) ➤ **Settings** ➤ **In Phone menu, Master Reset**

Restoring default handset settings	Reset Settings ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ Yes ➤ Yes • Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	Reset All ➤ Enter Handset Code ➤ Yes ➤ Yes • Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) • Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications. • Handset Code returns to the default setting.

- A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.
- When Double Number is active, regardless of usage mode setting, Reset Settings restores all default settings (Double Number is canceled), and Reset All clears all user files.



USIM Card	15-2
About USIM Card	15-2
USIM Card Installation.....	15-3
Battery.....	15-4
Battery Installation.....	15-4
Software Update.....	15-5
Cleaning Handset.....	15-6
Troubleshooting	15-7
Key Assignments	15-9
Pager Codes	15-11
Pager Code List.....	15-11
Character Codes	15-12
Character Code List.....	15-12

Weather Indicators	15-18
Weather Indicator List	15-18
Specifications	15-19
Memory Card Structure & Contents	15-24
Menu List.....	15-25
Index	15-32
Warranty & Service.....	15-40
Customer Service	15-41

15

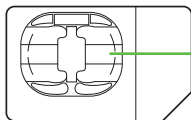
Appendix



About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions



IC Chip

- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Clean with soft dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank Mobile.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank Mobile upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank Mobile is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-41).

USIM PIN

4-digit code (**9999** by default); activate PIN Entry to restrict usage.

PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN three consecutive times activates PIN Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-41) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

Enter PUK Code ➡ ● ➡ **Enter new PIN** ➡ ● ➡ **Re-enter new PIN** ➡ ●

- Write down PUK code.

PUK Lock

- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times activates PUK Lock, disabling handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.15-41) for recovery.

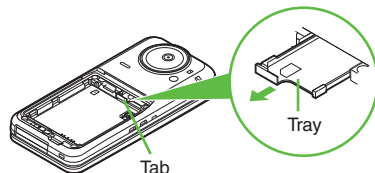


USIM Card Installation

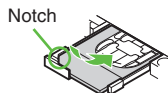
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

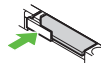
- 1 Remove battery (P.15-4)
- 2 Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks



- 3 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing up



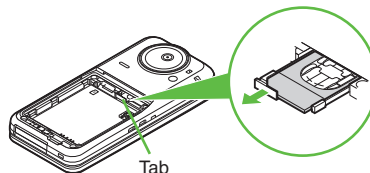
- 4 Push in Tray fully



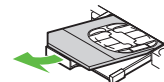
- Reinstall battery (P.15-4).

Removing

- 1 Remove battery
- 2 Using Tab, pull out Tray as shown until it clicks



- 3 Lift and slide out USIM Card as shown



- Reinstall battery.
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing® and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.



Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- To maintain water resistance, close Battery Cover properly.
- Battery is not waterproofed.

Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

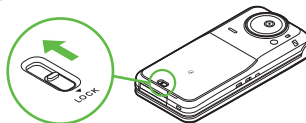


Li-ion00

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.

Inserting & Removing

1 Unlock Battery Cover

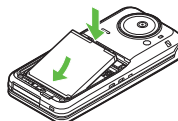


2 Remove cover



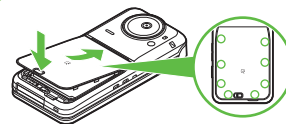
- Lift as shown.

3 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

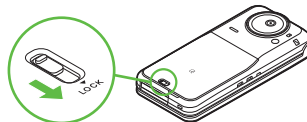
4 Close cover



Press firmly along edges

- Fit cover top into slot, then press down firmly.

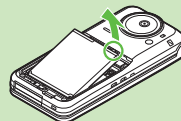
5 Lock cover



- Slide switch as shown until it clicks.
- Close cover firmly. Water may seep inside handset when there is debris between cover and base.

Removing

- Turn handset power off and lift battery as shown.



Software Update



Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

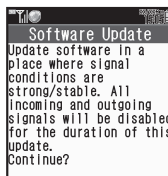
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank Mobile cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).


1  ➔ **Settings** ➔  ➔ In **Phone menu, Software Update** ➔ 

2 **Software Update** ➔ 



- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting Update Period (Japanese)


In  **Update Period** ➔ 

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result

In  **Update Result** ➔ 

Scheduled Update


Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

Update success notification appears and handset reboots.

After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result

While Information window appears, **Update Result** ➔ 

Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.15-41).



Cleaning Handset

Washing Handset

With Battery Cover locked, hold handset approximately 10 cm below faucet or shower head and wash with low-pressure tap water (6 liters/min. or lower) at normal temperature (5°C - 35°C). Wash with your hands, taking care not to open the covers; do not use a brush or sponge. Dry handset before use.

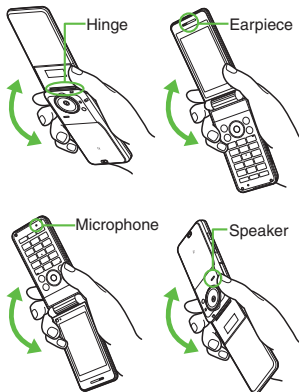
- Before washing handset, make sure that Battery Cover and Port Covers are closed firmly.
- Do not use a washing machine or ultrasonic cleaner.
- Do not place handset in a microwave oven to dry it. Battery/handset may leak, burst, overheat or ignite; may cause malfunction, accident or injury.
- Do not dry handset by exposing it to extreme heat (e.g., hot air from dryers, etc.); may cause warping, discoloration or damage.

Drying Handset

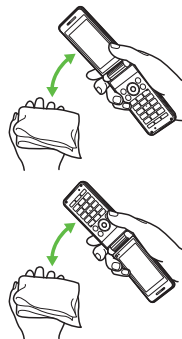
Dry these parts/areas after washing handset:

Hinge	Earpiece
Microphone	Speaker

- 1 Wipe handset surface with dry cloth**
- 2 Holding hinge firmly by its sides, shake handset about 20 times**



- 3 Pat against dry cloth to remove moisture from grooves**



- 4 Leave handset on dry cloth for approximately 2 - 3 hours at room temperature**





Do Not Use Wet Handset

- Voice quality may be affected, or moisture may transfer to clothes, bag, etc.
- Moisture may short-circuit External Device Port.
- Exposure to cold may freeze moisture causing malfunction.



Troubleshooting

■ General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	Was  pressed long enough?	Press  longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.15-4).
Handset won't respond	Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On ?	If On , PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
Insert USIM Card appears	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with dry cloth and re-insert.
REFRESH appears and handset returns to Standby	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active ( appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (P.1-23).
	Function Lock may be active ( appears).	Cancel Function Lock (P.11-2).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (P.11-3).
Cannot use Predictive	Show Secret Data may be active.	Cancel Show Secret Data.
Handset/AC Charger feels warm	Handset/AC Charger may warm while charging.	Unless handset/AC Charger is too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 935SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Clock settings are lost	Did you leave handset without battery?	Clock settings remain even when removing battery for replacement, etc. However, if handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.



■ Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (P.15-4).
	Battery, AC Charger, or Charging Terminals, or Device Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce TV, S! Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/ Backlight time, etc.



Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@./_-1 □ (space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkl5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
	・ ・	・ ・ _1	_____	✕ + P (pause) ? - ²	_____
Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List ³					_____
	.,. ♯ (line break) ? ! □ (space)	.. ♯ (line break) ?! □ (space)		#	_____

¹ - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.

² Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.

³ May not be enterable in some windows.





Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (up) ⁴	Cursor up			
	Conversion (down) ⁵	Cursor down (line break)			
	Cursor left				
	Cursor right				
	Switch entry modes (except during conversion)				
	Toggle Personal Mode ⁶	_____	Toggle Personal Mode ^{6, 7}	_____	
	Toggle case (for some characters)			_____	
	_____	Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)			
	Delete one character				
	Cancel conversion	_____	Cancel conversion ⁷	_____	Delete code
 (Long)	Delete before or after cursor				
	Recover characters deleted with				
	Re-convert ⁸	_____	Re-convert ^{7, 8}	_____	
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion	_____			

⁴Cursor moves up except during conversion.⁵Cursor moves down except during conversion.⁶Available during conversion.⁷Available only in single-byte alphanumeric entry.⁸Press immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.

Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press  to switch immediately after character entry.



Double-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			*1
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	✕	#	Space		*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	。	6	7	8	9	0



Double-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	。					

*1 Press   to insert  (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.

*2 Press   to toggle upper and lower case modes.

Single-byte Upper Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&			*1
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	✕	#	Space		*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	。	。	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte Lower Case

		Second Digit (Press Next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First Digit (Press First)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				ゝ	。					



Character Code List

First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
010										047	ゆ	よ	よ	り	る	れ	ろ	わ		161	葵	茜	花	悪	握	旭	葦	鯨	188	介
011	!									048	ゐ	ゑ	らん							162	梓	花	輪	輪	輪	輪	輪	189	会	
012	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ											163	輪	花	輪	輪	輪	輪	輪	190	解	
013	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	050	ア	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	164	輪	花	輪	輪	輪	輪	輪	191	塊	
014	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	051	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ									192	塊	
015	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	052	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	164	威	移	井	和	引			193	塊	
016	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	053	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	165								194	塊	
017	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	054	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	166								195	塊	
018	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	055	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	167								196	塊	
019	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	056	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	168								197	塊	
020	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	057	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	169								198	塊	
021	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	058	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	フ	ミ	ラ	170								199	塊	
022	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ																			200	塊	
023	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	060	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ	170								201	塊	
024	い	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	ゑ	ゎ	ゐ	061	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ	171	雨	卵	鶏	鶏	丑	右	宇	鳥	202	勘
										062	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ	172	雲	衛	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	203	基
										063	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ	173	雲	衛	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	204	奇
										064	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ										205	旗
										065	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ	173									206	紀
										070	カ	ア	ハ	フ	ミ	ラ	ニ	フ	ミ	174	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	207	基
031										071	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	175	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	207	奇
032	4	5	6	7	8	9				072	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	176	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	208	旗
033										073	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	177	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	209	旗
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	074	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	178	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	210	旗
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	075	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	178	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	211	旗
036										076	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	179	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	212	旗
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	077	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	180	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	213	旗
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	078	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	サ	タ	チ	ニ	181	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	214	旗
039	z																		182	曳	氷	永	詠	飲	宮	嬰	影	215	旗	
040										080	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一		182								216	下	
041										081	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一		182								217	下	
042										082	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一		183								218	下	
043										083	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一		184								219	下	
044																			185								220	下		
045																			186								221	下		
046										160	一	一	一	一	一	一	一	一		187								222	下	



[illegible]




















[illegible]

[illegible]





[illegible]

Weather Indicator List





Basic Status

	Clear skies (day)
	Clear skies (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder showers
	Chance of rain: 0%
	Chance of rain: 10%
	Chance of rain: 20%
	Chance of rain: 30%
	Chance of rain: 40%
	Chance of rain: 50%
	Chance of rain: 60%
	Chance of rain: 70%
	Chance of rain: 80%
	Chance of rain: 90%
	Chance of rain: 100%
	Then
	Partly/chance of





Pollen Count

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme





Cherry Blossom

	Flowering
	Almost full bloom
	Full bloom
	Beginning of petal fall




Fall Foliage

	No color change
	Colors appearing
	Peak
	Defoliating




Ultraviolet

	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extreme

Typhoon

	Forming
	Approaching
	Caution necessary

Other

	Heavy rain
	Gale
	Notification



Specifications

SoftBank 935SH

Weight*	132 g
Continuous Talk Time*	230 minutes (3G) 220 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time*	300 hours (3G) 270 hours (GSM) (handset closed)
Charging Time (power off)*	AC Charger: 135 minutes In-Car Charger: 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	50 x 108 x 15.4 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

*Approximate value.

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, in strong signal conditions without moving handset.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in strong signal conditions without moving handset. In Japan (3G service area), the value is calculated with IP Service Setting, Decoration Call, S! Appli Notification Setting and Mobile Widget Notification Setting set to **Off**.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side, Keypad side)	Nylon resin/SUS (insert-molded)/Discontinuous deposition/UV painting
Housing (Keypad side hinge), Side Keys (Volume Up Key, Volume Down Key, Shutter Key)	PC resin/UV painting
Housing (Keypad back), hinge rotation stopper, Battery Cover	Nylon resin/UV painting
Housing (Display back)	Aluminum/Anodized aluminum/UV painting
External Display panel	PC/UV hard coating/Translucent aluminum deposition (back)/Back printing
External Display panel ornament	ABS/UV painting
Camera ornament panel (including Infrared Port, camera lens)	Acrylic resin/Back printing
Display window	PC-Acrylic hybrid material/Back printing
Center Key, Multi Selector, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, TV & Text Key, Start Key, Clear/Back Key, Power On/Off Key, Keypad, Dictionary Key, Multi Job & Manner Key, Camera Key	UV curing resin/Back printing

Parts	Materials & Finishing
External Device Port Cover, Headphone Port Cover	PC resin/Elastomer/Discontinuous deposition/UV painting
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screws (Display side)	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate
Screws (Keypad side, battery side bottom)	SWCH12A/Trivalent chromate (white)
Screws (battery side center)	SWCH16A/Trivalent chromate (black)
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
USIM Tray	POM

Accessories

Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	710 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	37.7 x 46.9 x 4.2 mm (without protruding parts)

*Approximate value.

Desktop Holder

Input Voltage/Current	DC 5.4V/700 mA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.4V/700 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)*	131.5 x 29 x 46 mm

*Approximate value.



Getting Started

■ Standby Shortcut

Savable Items	30 per sheet
----------------------	--------------

Basic Operations

■ Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 30 characters Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	30,720 single-byte characters
Dictionary	Meikyo Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius English-Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Japanese-English Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

■ Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

Calling

Dialed Numbers	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Ranking: 10 records
Received Calls	30 records
Answer Phone/ Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers
Decoration Call	100 KB including 20 characters
Speed Dial/Mail	100 numbers/addresses

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	
	Sent Messages	5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages)
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	80 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumerics	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 1 MB	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Signature	256 single-byte characters	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 sort keys each)	
Chat Folders	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)

Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)	
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses (20 digits or 256 single-byte characters each)	
Anti Spam Measures	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

Limit may be lower depending on message text, etc.

■ PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	40 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
Set Sending	Port Number	1 to 65535
	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Download	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page 10 MB for progressive downloads
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
History	300 pages	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	100 pages	
Tab	3 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	20 URLs	
RSS Feeds	30 entries (60 KB per entry)	



Digital TV

Recorded File	ISDB-T mobile Video profile (SD-Video standard)	
Recording Time (example)	Handset	Approximately 30 minutes
	Memory Card	Approximately 80 minutes on 256 MB Memory Card
Marker	99 Markers (10 per file)	
Split File	99 portions per file	
Time Shift Recording	30 minutes	
Reservation List	5 entries (4 hours each on 1 GB Memory Card)	

Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	8.0 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 20.4x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	8M	2448 x 3264
	5M	1944 x 2592
	3M	1536 x 2048
	Full HD	1080 x 1920
	Wallpaper	480 x 854
	VGA	480 x 640
	QVGA	240 x 320
Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	
File Format	JPEG	
Memory	Approximately 30 files (at 8M, High Quality) on handset with no other files	
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm	

Background Save	3 files
Face Auto Focus	VGA or larger
Other	Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames

Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 5.1x	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	864 x 480 (Wide)
		640 x 480 (VGA)
		320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
	For Message	128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
		320 x 240 (QVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)

File Format	3GP	
Recording Capacity per Shot	Extended Video	Approximately 30 minutes* on Memory Card
	For Message	1 MB or 295 KB
File Name	yymmdd_hhmmss	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	
Still Image Capture	3 images	
Recording Pause Supported	QVGA or larger	

*Varies with handset usage, location or settings.

Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (480 x 854) Power On/Off (480 x 854) Incoming Call (320 x 320) Alarm (480 x 208) Pictogram (96 x 96) VGA (480 x 640) QVGA (240 x 320) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots

Media Player

Supported Formats	WMA (.wma), AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
All Music List	Music	Shows up to 350 files each
	Chaku-Uta®	
	WMA	Shows up to 999 files
	SD AUDIO	

S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 80 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)
Remote Control	Approximately 5 m



Handy Extras

PIM/Lifestyle

Calendar*/Tasks	300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays	
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters	
Wakeup TV	Auto Shut-off	Approximately 30 minutes
Calculator	999,999,999,999	
Expenses Memo	30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)	
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics	

*Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of March 2009.

Clocks/Gauges

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records	
Countdown Timer	99 minutes 59 seconds in 1-second increments	
World Clock	City name: 16 characters	
Pedometer	Today's Walking	Steps: 99,999
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 71.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 179.9 km
		Fat burned: 999.9 g
	Log	2 years
		Daily view: 9,999 steps per hour
		Weekly view: 99,999 steps per day

Pedometer	Accumulated Data	All Days: 999 days
		Steps: 99,999,999
		Time: 99,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 99,999.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999,999.9 kcal
	Average	Distance: 999,999.9 km
		Fat burned: 999,999.9 g
		Steps: 99,999
		Time: 23 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
		Exercise: 71.9 Ex
		Calories: 9,999.9 kcal
		Distance: 179.9 km
		Fat burned: 999.9 g

Doc./Rec.

Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad	500 entries	(8,192 characters each)
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 10 minutes (message size limit: 1 MB) or 3 minutes (message size limit: 300 KB) per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes

Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji
Scan Text	256 characters

Entertainment & Communication

Mobile Widget

Savable Items	4 widgets (S! Quick News & S! Friend's Status: 1, others: 3) per sheet x 4 sheets
----------------------	---

S! Quick News

Savable Items	Special: 1 item News Flash: 1 item General: 4 items
----------------------	---

e-Books

Text Copy	20 characters
------------------	---------------

S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters
	Comment: 15 characters
	Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)



■ Blog Tool

Blog Details	5 entries	
Blog Title	16 characters	
Blog Settings (Mail)	Email Address	128 characters
	Title	32 characters
	Text	128 characters
	Picture Size	S (320 x 320) M (640 x 640) L (1024 x 1024) Send
	URL for Posting	1,024 characters
Blog Settings (Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser)	URL for Viewing	1,024 characters

Data Folder

Memory	80 MB (shared with Messaging Templates folder and S! Appli Library)
---------------	---

Memory Card

Backup File Name	ymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/alphabets)
-------------------------	-----------------------------------

*ymmdd for Contents Keys.

Connectivity & File Backup

■ Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm
	IrSS Transfer (JPEG images) Receive 2,500 KB or less; send 4,000 KB or less (after resizing)	

■ Bluetooth®

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver. 2.0
Supported Profiles	Headset Profile
	Hands-Free Profile
	Dial-up Networking Profile
	Object Push Profile
	File Transfer Profile
	Basic Imaging Profile
	Advanced Audio Distribution Profile
Output	Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Range	Within 10 m
Device Search	16 devices
Pairing	32 devices
Device Name	16 characters
Printing	JPEG/PNG images

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records
------------	---

Network

Add Network	5 Networks
	Country/Network code: 3 digits
	Name: 25 single-byte characters

Reference URLs

■ SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

<http://mb.softbank.jp/en/>

■ S! Addressbook Back-up

http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ Messaging Basics

http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/mail.html

■ Custom Handset Address

<https://www.email.softbank.ne.jp/help/e/address.html>

■ Yahoo! Keitai

http://mb.softbank.jp/en/customer_support/web.html

■ Secure Remote Lock

http://mb.softbank.jp/en/price_plans/basic_option.html

■ microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility From PC (Japanese)

http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/>

■ Compatible Blu-ray Disc Recorders

<http://www.sharp.co.jp/bd/spec/index.html> (Japanese)

■ SVG-T

From Handset (Japanese)

http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svg/index_pdc.html

■ Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting From PC

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/>

From Handset (Japanese)

<http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>



Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure			Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP	Local Contents	SD Local Contents
		Mail	Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	My Items	Book
			e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks
			Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character
			PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			CSI
			Decoration Call files in Data Folder (Decoration Call)
			Custom Screens
			Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)
			Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones
			Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More
			S! Applications
			Hot Status Template
			Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Mail Art
			Files in Data Folder (Mail Art)
		Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
		Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
		Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
		Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
		Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
		Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones)
		Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
		Widget	Widget files in Data Folder (Widget)
		WMAudio	WMA files for Media Player (WMA)
		SH_Folder	Application management files
		Utility	Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE	Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.
SD_AUDIO			SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)



Menu List

Messaging

Function		Refer to
Received Msg.		P.4-12
Create Message		P.4-4
Retrieve New Msg.		P.4-23
Drafts		P.4-29
Templates		P.4-22
Sent Messages		P.4-12
Unsent Messages		P.4-29
Chat Folder		P.4-15
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.4-23
	Retrieve All	P.4-23
	Delete All	P.4-27
	Mailbox Volume	P.4-29
Create New SMS		P.4-7
Settings	Address Settings	P.4-3
	General Settings	P.4-30
	S! Mail Settings	P.4-32
	PC Mail Settings	P.4-18
	SMS Settings	P.4-34
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-20
	Set Mail Group	P.4-16
Memory Status		P.4-26

Settings: General Settings

	Function	Refer to
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.4-30
	Reply to Settings	P.4-30
	Reply With Text	P.4-30
	Auto Reply	P.4-25
	Set Quick Reply	P.4-25
	Auto Resend	P.4-30
	Sending Status	P.4-30
	Restrictions Setting	P.4-8
Receive	Message Notice	P.4-31
	Link to Feeling	P.4-31
	Animation View	P.4-31
	Anti Spam Measures	P.4-14
	Report Spam	P.4-30
	Scroll Unit	P.4-30
	Message List View	P.4-30
	Address View	P.4-30
	Received Msg. View	P.4-30
	Sent Msg. View	P.4-30
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.4-30
	Sent Messages	P.4-30

Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function		Refer to
Message DL(Japan)		P.4-11
Message DL(Abroad)		P.4-11
Signature		P.4-20
Picture Appearance		P.4-32
Auto Play	Pictures	P.4-32
File	Sounds	P.4-32
Create Msg. Size		P.4-22
DL Size Limit		P.4-32
Send File Settings		P.4-32

Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.4-18
PC Mail DL	P.4-33
Check New Mail	P.4-33
Word wrap	P.4-33

Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.4-34
Message Center	P.4-34
Char-code	P.4-34



Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3
History	P.5-3
PC Site Browser	P.5-4
Browser Settings	P.5-11

PC Site Browser

Function	Refer to
Homepage	P.5-4
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-4
History	P.5-4
RSS Feed	P.5-8
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3

PC Site Browser Settings

Font Size	P.5-11
Scroll Settings	P.5-12
Cursor Settings	P.5-11
Downloads	P.5-11
Memory Operation	P.5-9
Security Settings	P.5-15
Download to	P.5-11
Initialized Browser	P.5-15
Reset Settings	P.5-15
Warning Message	P.5-12
Zoom Factor	P.5-11
Softkey Area	P.5-4

Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.5-11
Scroll Unit	P.5-11
Cursor Settings	P.5-11
Downloads	P.5-11
Memory Operation	P.5-9
Security Settings	P.5-15
Download to	P.5-11
Initialized Browser	P.5-15
Reset Settings	P.5-15

S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.8-7
Osaifu-Keitai	P.9-14
Notification History	P.8-7
Settings	P.8-12
Information	P.8-12


Settings

Function		Refer to
Application Volume		P.8-11
Backlight		P.8-12
Vibration		P.8-12
Synchronization		P.8-12
Notification Setting		P.8-12
Calls & Alarms		P.8-11
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.8-11
	Activation Time	P.8-11
	Stop Auto Start	P.8-11
Surround		P.8-11
Set to Default		P.8-12
Memory All Clear		P.8-12

TV

Function	Refer to
Digital TV	P.6-4
TV Player	P.6-9
TV-Image Folder	P.6-6
TV Link	P.6-14
TV Listing	P.6-7
Familink Remote	P.1-3
Reservation List	P.6-10
Settings	P.6-13
Recorder Contents	P.6-16

Settings

Function		Refer to
TV Alarm		P.6-17
Broadcast Data	Set Recording	P.6-15
	Image Location	P.6-15
	Notify Connection	P.6-14
	Location	P.6-14
	Manufacture Number	P.6-14
	Delete StationData	P.6-14
Screen Size		P.6-4
Set Landscape		P.6-13
Sound Output		P.6-13
 Sound Output		P.6-13
Set Call Time Shift		P.6-15
Calls & Alarms		P.6-14
TV Reserve Prior		P.6-17
Save Recording to		P.6-15
Auto Exit	Auto Exit Time	P.6-13
	Close Action	P.6-13
Smooth Mode		P.6-12



Camera		
Function		Refer to
Photo Camera		P.7-3
Video Camera		P.7-7
Scan Barcode		P.9-29
Scan Card		P.9-31
Kanji Grabber		P.9-33
Scan Text		P.9-32
Review		P.7-9
Photo Settings	Picture Size	P.7-20
	Focus Setting	P.7-20
	Save Setting	P.7-19
	Shutter Setting	P.7-20
	Settings	P.7-19
Video Settings	Record Time/Size	P.7-22
	Shake Reducing	P.7-22
	Microphone	P.7-22
	Save Setting	P.7-19
Set Camera Key		P.7-19

■ Photo Camera

Function		Refer to
Scene		P.7-6
Picture Size		P.7-20
Focus Setting		P.7-19
Save Setting	Save Pictures to	P.7-19
	Auto Save	P.7-19
	Background Save	P.7-20
Shutter Setting	Egao level	P.7-20
	Shutter Mode	P.7-6
	Shutter Sound	P.7-20
	Set Remote Shutter	P.7-21

Function		Refer to
Self-timer		P.7-10
Camera Mode	Video Camera	P.7-7
	Scan Barcode	P.9-29
	Scan Card	P.9-31
	Kanji Grabber	P.9-33
	Scan Text	P.9-32
Data Folder		P.7-19
Modes	Add Frame	P.7-11
	Continuous Shoot	P.7-10
	Camera Effects	P.7-11
	Long Exposure	P.7-11
	Panorama/Scanner	P.7-12
Settings	Picture Quality	P.7-19
	ISO Sensitivity	P.7-20
	White Balance	P.7-20
	Exposure	P.7-19
	Shake Reducing	P.7-20
	Display Setting	P.7-20
	Set Send Key	P.7-20
Help		P.7-19
Mobile Light		P.7-20

■ Video Camera

Function		Refer to
Record Time/Size		P.7-22
Focus Setting		P.7-19
Save Setting		P.7-19
Display Size		P.7-22
Self-timer		P.7-10
Shake Reducing		P.7-22
Data Folder		P.7-19
Settings	Video Quality	P.7-19
	Exposure	P.7-19
	Microphone	P.7-22
Help		P.7-19
Mobile Light		P.7-22

■ Video Settings: Save Setting

Function		Refer to
Save Videos to		P.7-19
Auto Save		P.7-19
Video Encode		P.7-22
Audio Encode		P.7-22



Entertainment

	Function	Refer to
Mobile Widget	Widget Contents	P.10-2
	Widget History	P.10-16
	Settings	P.10-16
	Information	P.10-17
S! Quick News		P.10-5
S! Information Channel/ Weather	What's New	P.10-6
	Back Issue	P.10-6
	Registration/Cancel	P.10-6
	Get Latest Contents	P.10-19
	Notification	P.10-19
Weather Indicator		P.10-6
BookSurfing		P.10-7
e-Book Viewer		P.10-7

S! Quick News

	Function	Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.10-5
Settings	Automatic Update	P.10-18
	Show Image	P.10-19
	Check Schedule	P.10-18
	Change Skin	P.10-19
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	P.10-18

S! Information Channel/Weather:
Weather Indicator

	Function	Refer to
Weather		P.10-20
Manual Update		P.10-6
Settings	Standby Setting	P.10-20
	Weather Notif.	P.10-20
	Icon Update	P.10-20

Tools

PIM/Lifestyle

	Function	Refer to
Simulated Call	Calendar	P.9-2
	Alarms	P.9-7
	Wakeup TV	P.9-9
	Relaxation Time	P.9-11
	Tasks	P.9-5
	Calculator	P.9-12
	Expenses Memo	P.9-13
	Osaifu-Keitai	P.9-14
	Receive Simulated Call	P.9-40
	Switch On/Off	P.9-18
	Set Caller	P.9-18
	Assign Tone	P.9-18
	Receive Timing For Silent Mode	P.9-18

PIM/Lifestyle: Osaifu-Keitai

	Function	Refer to
Lifestyle-Appli		P.9-14
IC Card Settings	IC Card Status	P.9-39
	IC Card Lock	P.9-15
	Remote Lock	P.9-16
	Interface Settings	P.9-39
	Balance Info	P.9-39
	Set to Default	P.9-39

Clocks/Gauges

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.9-19
Countdown Timer	P.9-20
World Clock	P.9-21
Hour Minder	P.9-22
Pedometer	P.9-23
Battery Meter	P.1-23

Doc./Rec.


	Function	Refer to
Voice Recorder	Dictionary	P.2-12
	Search	P.2-14
	Document Viewer	P.9-25
	Notepad	P.9-26
	Scratch Pad	P.2-15
Barcode/ Scan	ASCII Art	P.9-27
	Record Time	P.9-41
	Ring Songs-Tones	P.9-28
	Save Recording to	P.9-42
	Scan Barcode	P.9-29
	Open Barcode	P.9-42
	Create QR Code	P.9-30
	Scan Card	P.9-31
	Kanji Grabber	P.9-33
	Scan Text	P.9-32
Phone Help	Scanned Results	P.9-42
		P.1-23



Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.7-13
DCIM	P.12-2
Ring Songs-Tones	P.9-28
S! Appli	P.8-7
Widget	P.10-2
Music	P.12-2
Videos	P.12-2
Lifestyle-Appli	P.9-14
Books	P.12-2
Customized Screen	P.2-4
Status Templates	P.12-2
Decoration Call	P.3-6
Flash@	P.12-2
Other Documents	P.12-2
Memory Status	P.12-2

Media Player

Function		Refer to
Music		P.8-4
Videos		P.8-5
Streaming		P.5-12
MTP Mode		P.8-3
Settings	 Sound Output	P.8-8
	Delete All WMA	P.8-9

Music

Function		Refer to
Last Played Music		P.8-8
My Music		P.8-6
SD AUDIO		P.8-9
WMA		P.8-4
Download Music		P.8-3
Music Search		P.8-3
Settings	Sound Effects	P.8-8
	Playback Mode	P.8-8

Videos

Function		Refer to
Last Played Video		P.8-8
My Videos		P.8-5
Recorder Contents		P.8-5
SD VIDEO		P.8-5
Download Videos		P.8-3
Settings	Playback Mode	P.8-8
	Backlight	P.8-8
	Display Size	P.8-8
	Sound Effects	P.8-8
	Web Link Setting	P.8-8

Communication

Function	Refer to
S! Friend's Status	P.10-8
S! Circle Talk	P.10-11
Near chat	P.10-13
Blog Tool	P.10-14

Phone

Function		Refer to
Phone Book		P.2-16
Add New Entry		P.2-16
Information		P.1-7
Call Log		P.3-8
Play Messages		P.3-4
Call Voicemail		P.3-13
Set Category		P.2-17
My Details		P.1-23
Speed Dial/Mail		P.3-7
Mail Groups		P.4-16
S! Addressbook Backup		P.13-14
Ph.Book Settings	Sort Entries	P.2-18
	Select Phone Book	P.2-23
	Save New Entry	P.2-23
	New Number Prompt	P.2-21
	View Settings	P.2-21
Call Log Setting		P.3-17
Manage Entries	Copy All	P.2-22
	Memory Status	P.2-22
	Change Mode(All)	P.2-23
	Delete All	P.2-22



Settings

■ Phone

Function		Refer to
Mode Settings		P.1-29
Display		P.14-3
External Display		P.1-28
Customize		P.2-4
Sounds & Alerts		P.2-5
Date & Time		P.14-2
Set Key Light		P.14-4
言語選択 (Language)		P.14-3
User Dictionary		P.2-11
Set Key Shortcut		P.1-13
Motion Control		P.1-19
Ringer Output		P.14-6
Earpiece Volume		P.3-15
Change Menu		P.1-17
Double Number	Switch On/Off	P.1-24
	Double Mode	P.1-26
	Password Entry	P.1-30
	Mode Name	P.1-30
	Reject By Line	P.1-30
	Show Missed	P.1-30
	Packet Warning	P.1-30
	Send Priority	P.1-30
Locks		P.11-2
Software Update		P.15-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.14-9
	Reset All	P.14-9

■ Phone: Display

Function		Refer to
Wallpaper		P.2-3
System Graphics		P.14-3
VeilView		P.1-30
Display Effects		P.14-3
Font Settings		P.2-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
	Show Operator Name	P.14-4
	Pedometer	P.9-40
Vivid Mode		P.14-3
Mini Battery		P.1-30
Greeting Message		P.14-3
Backlight		P.14-3
Display Saving		P.14-3
Dial Number		P.14-3

■ Phone: External Display

Function	Refer to
Lighting Time	P.1-28
Display Date&Time	P.1-28
Pedometer	P.1-28
Charging Time	P.1-29
Animation	P.1-29
Messages	P.1-29
Caller Display	P.1-29
Call Groups View	P.1-29
System Graphics	P.1-29

■ Phone: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.14-5
Ringtone/videos	P.2-5
System Sounds	P.14-6
Vibration	P.2-5
Event Light	P.14-5
Set Key Illumi	P.14-4
Status Light	P.14-5
Any Key Answer	P.14-5
Surround	P.14-6

■ Phone: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.14-2
Time Correction	P.14-2
Daylight Saving	P.14-2
Set Time Zone	P.14-2
Clock/Calendar	P.14-4
World Clock	P.9-21
Alarms	P.9-7
Set Holiday	P.9-34
Time Format	P.14-2
Date Format	P.14-2
Calendar Format	P.14-2



Phone: Locks

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.11-2
Function Lock	P.11-2
IP Service Setting	P.14-8
Function Control	P.11-4
Application Lock	P.11-3
History Lock	P.11-3
Show Secret Data	P.11-3
Set Lock Message	P.11-5
Chg. Handset Code	P.1-22

Connectivity

Function		Refer to
Bluetooth		P.13-7
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.13-17
	Send All	P.13-4
	IrSS Key Setting	P.13-17
IC Transmission	1 File Reception	P.13-17
	Send All	P.13-6
USB Mode	Mass Storage	P.13-11
	Recorder Link	P.13-11
	MTP Mode	P.8-3
USB Charge		P.1-27
Memory Card		P.12-7
Backup/ Restore	Backup All Items	P.13-19
	Backup Selected Items	P.13-13
	Restore All Items	P.13-19
	Restore Selected Items	P.13-13
	Settings/Manage	P.13-19

Connectivity: Bluetooth


Function	Refer to
Switch On/Off	P.13-17
Add Device	P.13-8
Paired Devices	P.13-9
Send All	P.13-10
Setting Watch	P.13-18
My Device Settings	P.13-17
My Device Details	P.13-17

Connectivity: Memory Card

Function		Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.7-18
	Settings	P.7-23
	Check Settings	P.7-18
	Reset Settings	P.7-23
SD Local Contents		P.12-9
Format Card		P.12-7
Memory Status		P.12-2

Call

Function		Refer to
Call Time/ Data Counter	Call Timers	P.3-9
	Data Counter	P.3-18
	Call Time Counter	P.3-17
	Minute Minder	P.3-17
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-4
	Answer Time	P.3-14
	Outgoing Message	P.3-14
	Volume	P.3-14
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.3-13
	Diverts	P.3-12
	Cancel All	P.3-13
	Status	P.3-19

Function		Refer to
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.3-20
	Incoming Picture	P.3-20
	Outgoing Picture	P.3-20
	Hold Guidance Pict	P.3-20
	Backlight	P.3-20
	Loudspeaker	P.3-20
	Mute Microphone	P.3-20
	Remote Monitor	P.3-14
Show My Number		P.3-20
	Missed Calls	P.3-13
Int'l Calling	Int'l Prefix	P.3-15
	Country Codes	P.3-15
	Auto Add Code	P.3-15
Call Barring	Bar Outgoing Calls	P.3-19
	Restrict Destinations	P.3-10
	Bar Incoming Calls	P.3-20
	Reject Numbers	P.3-18
	Change NW Password	P.3-19
Decoration Call	Switch On/Off	P.3-16
	Play in Receiving	P.3-16
	Notice	P.3-17
Auto Answer		P.3-20
Call Waiting		P.3-19

Network

Function	Refer to
Select Network	P.14-7
Select Service	P.14-7
Offline Mode	P.1-21
Retrieve NW Info	P.14-7
Location Info	P.14-8
Network Info	P.14-7
External Device	P.14-7



Index

A

AC Charger	1-4
Accessing Functions	1-11
Accessories	v
After-Sales Services	15-40
Alarms	9-7
Canceling	9-8
Deleting	9-8
Editing entries	9-38
For Manner Mode	9-38
Link to World Clk	9-38
Animation View	4-9
Answer Phone	3-4, 3-14
Anti Spam Measures	4-14, 4-28
Any Key Answer	14-5
Application Lock	11-3
ASCII Art	9-27
Auto Focus	7-2
Auto Reply	4-10, 4-25
Auto Resend	4-2, 4-30
Auto Retry Function	4-2

B

Backlight	14-3
Backup	13-12
Settings/Manage	13-19
Bar Incoming Calls	3-20
Bar Outgoing Calls	3-19
Battery	1-4, 15-4
Battery Cover	1-2
Battery Cover Lever	1-2
Battery Meter	1-23
Blog Tool	10-14, 10-22
Bluetooth®	13-7
Blu-ray Disc recorders	13-11
Bookmarks	5-7

BookSurfing®	10-7
--------------------	------

C

Calculator	9-12, 9-38
Calendar	9-2
Calendar Settings	9-34
Editing schedules	9-35
Call Barring	3-12, 3-19
Call Forwarding	3-12
Call Log	3-8, 3-17
Call Time Counter	3-17
Call Waiting	3-12, 3-19
Call Waiting (answering Line 2)	3-19
Caller ID	3-12, 3-20
Camera	7-2
Auto Save	7-19
Capturing Still Images	7-3
Exposure	7-19
Locking focus	7-19
Macro	7-19
Manual Focus	7-19
Mobile Light	7-20, 7-22
Picture Quality	7-19
Recording Video	7-7
Review	7-9
Save Pictures to	7-19
Save Videos to	7-19
Self-timer	7-10
Send/Blog	7-9
Video Quality	7-19
Center Access Code	1-22
Change NW Password	3-19
Change PIN	11-5
Character Code List	15-12
Charging	1-4
Charging Terminals	1-2
Chat Folder	4-15, 4-28
Cleaning (handset)	15-6

Clock/Calendar	14-4
Communication	10-1
Composite	7-17
Countdown Timer	9-20
Create Msg. Size	4-22, 4-32
Create QR Code	9-30
Customer Service	15-41
Customized Screen (Japanese)	2-4

D

Data Broadcast (Japanese)	6-5
Change View (Data)	6-14
Returning to initial window	6-14
Set Recording	6-15
Data Counter	3-18
Data Folder	12-2
Files (attaching)	4-5, 12-3
Files (moving/copying)	12-4
Files (opening)	12-3
Files (renaming)	12-9
Folders (adding)	12-4
Selecting Multiple Files	12-4
Set Secret (folders)	12-4
Slide Show	12-3
Date & Time	14-2
Daylight Saving	9-21, 14-2
Decoration Call	3-6, 3-16
Delivery Report	4-9, 4-21, 4-30
Desktop Holder	v
Dialing from Call Log records	3-17
Dictionary	2-12
Digital TV (→ TV)	6-2
Adding Reception Areas	6-3
Area Setup	6-3
Auto Exit	6-13
AV Settings	6-12
Calls & Alarms	6-14
Change Area	6-12



Program Info. Search	6-12
Screen Size	6-4
Set Channels	6-12
Sound Output	6-13
Subtitle/Sound	6-15
TV Alarm	6-17
Display	1-2, 1-7
Display (settings)	14-3
Display Effects	14-3
Display Saving	14-3
Document Viewer	9-25
Double Number	1-24, 1-30
Download Dictionary	2-11
DPOF	7-18
Add Date	7-23
Check Settings	7-18
For All Pictures	7-18
Index Print	7-23
Dual Mode	1-25

E

Earpiece	1-2
Earpiece Volume	3-15
e-Book Library	10-20
e-Book Viewer	10-7
e-Books (Japanese)	10-7, 10-20
Emergency Calls	3-2
English	14-3
Entertainment	10-1
Event Light	14-5
Expenses Memo	9-13
External Camera	1-2
External Device Connection	13-11
External Device Port	1-2
External Display	1-2, 1-20

F

Face Arrange	7-16
Feeling Mail (receiving)	4-9
Feeling Mail (sending)	4-5

Focus (locking)	7-19
Focus Setting	7-19
Font Size	2-2
Format Card	12-7
Function Control	11-4
Function Lock	11-2

G

General Notes	xii
Graphic Mail	4-6
Group Calling	3-12, 3-19
Group Calling (opening another line)	3-19
Guide Usage Notes	ii

H

Handset Closed	1-2
Handset Code	1-22
Handset Keys	1-3
Handset mail address	4-3
Handset Open	1-2
Handset Parts	1-2
Handset Positions	1-2
Handset Power On/Off	1-6
Handset responses	2-5
Headphone Port	1-2
Headphones (answering calls)	3-14
History Lock	11-3
Hold	3-14
Hour Minder	9-22
Assign Tone/Video	9-40
For Manner Mode	9-40
Link to World Clk	9-40
Vibration	9-40

I

IC Card Lock	9-15
IC Card Settings	9-15
IC Transmission	13-5
Indicators	1-9
Camera (Viewfinder)	7-3, 7-8

Display	1-9
Messaging (message list)	4-10
Music Playback Window	8-4
SI Quick News	10-5
Video Playback Window	8-5

Information window

Infrared	13-2
Receiving files	13-3
Sending files	13-4, 13-17
Infrared Port	1-2
Internal Antenna	1-2
International calls	3-3, 3-15
Internet	5-2
Accessing	5-3, 5-4
Basic Operations	5-5
Browser Settings	5-11
Enter URL	5-3, 5-4
History	5-3, 5-4
Saving Bookmarks/pages	5-7
Int'l Call	3-4
IP Service Setting	14-8
IrSS Transfer	13-2

K

Kanji Grabber	9-33
Key Assignments	15-9
Keypad Lock	1-23

L

Language	14-3
Large Font Menu	2-2
Light Sensor	1-2, 14-3
Link to Feeling	4-31
Link to World Clk	9-38, 9-40
Locks	1-22, 11-2
Loudspeaker	3-15, 3-20, 10-22

M

Mail Groups	4-16
Changing members	4-28



Deleting	4-28	Preview Message	4-4	Motion Control	1-18
Edit Name	4-28	Recipient status	4-20	MTP Mode	8-3
Main Menu	1-11	Recipients (editing)	4-20	Multi Job	1-14
Manner mode	1-21	Resend	4-29	Music (deleting)	8-9
Mass Storage	13-11	Save to Drafts	4-21	Music (downloading)	8-3
Master Reset	14-9	Send Reservation	4-21	Music (playing)	8-4, 8-8
Format Card	12-7	Set Auto Play File	4-22	My Details	1-23
Reset All	14-9	Set Sent Cancel	4-21	Sending via IC Transmission	13-17
Reset Settings	14-9	Signature	4-20	Sending via Infrared	13-17
Media Player	8-2	Speed Dial/Mail	4-20		
Delete All WMA	8-9	Templates	4-22	N	
Playlists	8-6, 8-9, 8-10	Messages (deleting)	4-19, 4-26	Near Chat (Japanese)	10-13
Memory All Clear (S! Applications)	8-12	Auto Delete	4-30	Network Password	1-22
Memory Card	12-5	Messages (forwarding)	4-29	Notepad	9-26
Format Card	12-7	Messages (protecting)	4-12	Edit Text	9-41
Opening files	12-7	Messages (receiving/checking)	4-9	Change Category	9-41
Memory Card Structure & Contents	15-24	Accessing new mail out of Standby	4-23	O	
Menu List	15-25	DL Size Limit	4-32	Offline Mode	1-21
Camera	15-27	Mail List	4-23	Optional Services	3-12
Communication	15-29	Message List	4-10, 4-26	Optional Services (checking status)	3-19
Data Folder	15-29	Message Window	4-10, 4-24	Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)	9-14
Entertainment	15-28	Retrieving complete S! Mail messages manually	4-11	Balance Info	9-39
Media Player	15-29	Retrieving PC Mail	4-19, 4-33	IC Card Settings	9-15
Messaging	15-25	Save to Data Folder	4-24	Locking	9-15
Phone	15-29	Messages (sorting)	4-14	Set to Default	9-39
S! Appli	15-26	Anti Spam Measures	4-14, 4-28	P	
Settings	15-30	Messaging (→ SMS, S! Mail, PC Mail)	4-2	Pager Code List	15-11
Tools	15-28	General Settings	4-30	PC (connecting handset)	13-11
TV	15-26	PC Mail Settings	4-33	PC Mail	4-2, 4-17
Yahoo! Keitai	15-26	Receive (settings)	4-31	PC Mail (sending)	4-19
Message List View	4-30	S! Mail Settings	4-32	PC Site Browser	5-4
Message Notice	4-31	Send/Compose (settings)	4-30	Pedometer	9-23
Messages (creating/sending)	4-4, 4-7, 4-19	SMS Settings	4-34	Pen Light	1-23
Attachments	4-22	Microphone	1-2	Personal Mode	2-7
Drafts	4-29	Minute Minder	3-17	Phone Book (deleting)	2-22
Edit	4-29	Missed Call Notification	3-13	Phone Book (editing)	2-22
Edit & Send	4-29	Mobile Light	1-2	Phone Book (saving)	2-16
Graphic Mail	4-22	Mobile Widget	10-2	Phone Book (using)	2-18
Inserting signature manually	4-20	Mode Settings	1-29		
Messaging Settings	4-21				





Phone Book search	2-18
Phone Help	1-23
Picture Editor	7-13
PIN	15-2
PIN Entry	11-2
PIN Lock	15-2
Playlists	8-6, 8-9, 8-10
Pressure Vent	1-2
Printing	7-18
Printing (Bluetooth®)	7-18

Q

Quick Operations	1-11
Quick Reply	4-25
Quick Silent	1-18

R

Received Msg. View	4-30
Record Caller Voice	3-16
Recorder Contents	8-5
Reference URLs	15-23
Reject (calls)	3-14
Relaxation Time	9-11
Remote Lock (Osaifu-Keitai®)	9-16
Call Remote Lock	9-17
Count for Lock	9-39
Mail Remote Lock	9-16
Notice Settings	9-39
Remote Monitor	3-14
Reply	4-10, 4-19, 4-25
Auto Reply	4-25
Opening received message for reference	4-25
Set Quick Reply	4-25
Reply Assist Dictionary	2-11
Reset (→ Master Reset)	14-9
Reset All	14-9
Reset Settings	14-9
Retrieve NW Info	14-7
Retrieving Network Information	1-6

Review	7-9
RSS Feeds	5-8

S

S! Addressbook Back-up	13-14
Confirming user ID & password	13-19
Set Auto Sync	13-19
Sync History	13-19
S! Applications	8-7
S! Circle Talk	10-11, 10-22
Accepting requests	10-12
Initiating	10-12
IP Service Setting	14-8
Registering Members	10-11
S! Familiar Usability	2-4
S! FeliCa (→ Osaifu-Keitai®)	9-14
S! Friend's Status	10-8, 10-21
IP Service Setting	14-8
Opening Member Status	10-9
S! Information Channel (Japanese)	10-6, 10-19
Weather Indicator	10-6
S! Mail	4-2
Attaching Files	4-5
Create Msg. Size	4-22, 4-32
Feeling Mail	4-5
Graphic Mail	4-6
S! Mail Settings	4-32
S! Mail (sending)	4-4
S! Quick News (Japanese)	10-5
Automatic Update	10-18
Deleting items	10-18
Safety Precautions	vi
SAR	xx
Saved Pages	5-7, 5-13
Scan Barcode	9-29
Open Barcode	9-42
Scanning during text entry	9-42
Using scan results	9-42
Scan Card	9-31

Using scan results	9-44
Scan Text	9-32
Scanning and pasting during text entry	9-44
Using scan results	9-45
Schedules (→ Calendar)	9-2
Scratch Pad	2-15
SD Local Contents	12-9
Search	2-14
Security Codes	1-26
Sent Msg. View	4-30
Set as Wallpaper	12-8
Set Date/Time	14-2
Set Key Light	14-4
Set Key Shortcut	1-13
Set Sent Cancel	4-21
Set Time Zone	9-21, 14-2
Set to Default (S! Applications)	8-12
Shortcuts	1-11
Show My Number	3-20
Show Secret Data	11-3
Side Keys	1-3
Signature	4-20
Simple Menu	1-17
Simulated Call	9-18
Slide W paper	2-3
Small Light	1-2
SMS	4-2
SMS Settings	4-34
SMS (sending)	4-7
Snooze	9-7, 9-8
Softkeys	1-8
Software Update	15-5
Sounds & Alerts	2-5, 14-5
Speaker	1-2
Specifications	15-19
Specifications (by function)	15-20
Basic Operations	15-20
Calling	15-20
Camera & Imaging	15-21
Connectivity & File Backup	15-23

Data Folder	15-23
Digital TV	15-21
Entertainment & Communication	15-22
Getting Started	15-20
Handy Extras	15-22
Media Player	15-21
Memory Card	15-23
Messaging	15-20
Network	15-23
S! Applications	15-21
Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser	15-20
Speed Dial/Mail	3-7, 4-20
Standby	1-6
Standby Shortcuts	1-15
Status Icon List	1-7
Status Light	14-5
Status Templates	12-2
Still images (capturing)	7-3
Add Frame	7-11
Camera Effects	7-11
Continuous Shoot	7-10
Focus	7-20
ISO Sensitivity	7-20
Long Exposure	7-11
Panorama Picture	7-12
Picture Size	7-20
Scanner	7-12
Scene	7-6
Shake Reducing	7-20
Shutter Mode	7-6
Shutter Sound	7-20
White Balance	7-20
Still images (capturing & sending)	7-3, 7-4
Still images (editing)	7-13
Additional editing options	7-22
Changing sizes	7-14
Face Arrange	7-16
Merge Panorama	7-17
Stopwatch	9-19
Strap Eyelet	1-2

Streaming	5-3
Swap Calls	3-19
System Graphics	14-3
System Sounds	14-6

T

Table of Contents	iii
Tasks	9-5
Deleting Tasks	9-6
Editing tasks	9-36
Opening Tasks	9-6
Text (editing)	2-10
Text Entry	2-6
Emoticons	2-8
Hiragana	2-7
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion	2-9
Input/Conversion	2-20
Inserting line breaks	2-19
Inserting Phone Book entry items	2-19
Inserting spaces	2-19
Katakana	2-8
Mail & Web Extensions	2-9
One-Hiragana Conversion	2-8
Personal Mode	2-7
Phonetic Conversion	2-7
Pictograms & Symbols	2-8
Quick Conversion	2-9
Reset Log	2-19
Switching Entry Modes	2-6
Undo conversion or recover deleted characters	2-19
Using Character Codes	2-19
Using Pager Code	2-19
When Target Word is Not Listed	2-7
Time Correction	14-2
Time Shift	6-11
Troubleshooting	15-7
TV (watching)	6-4
Channels (saving)	6-12

Data Broadcast (Japanese)	6-5
Help	6-12
Program Info	6-7
TV Listing (Japanese)	6-7
TV Player	6-9
TV programs (recording/playing)	6-8, 6-9
Details	6-16
Marker List	6-17
Markers	6-17
Memory Remaining	6-16
Playback Pattern	6-16
Playing split files	6-16
Recorded programs (deleting)	6-16
Recorded programs (renaming)	6-16
Split File	6-16
TV Reserve Prior	6-17
TV Timers (watching/recording)	6-10
Setting Timer via Program Info	6-7
Timer entries (editing/deleting)	6-17
Timer log records (opening/deleting)	6-17
TV Alarm	6-17
Wakeup TV	9-9

U

USB Charge	1-5, 1-27
User Dictionary	2-11
Deleting entries	2-20
USIM Card	15-2
USIM PIN (→ PIN)	15-2
Utility Software	13-11

V

VeilView	1-23
Vibration	2-5
Video (deleting)	8-10
Video (downloading)	8-3
Video (playing)	8-5, 8-8
Video (recording)	7-7
Display Size	7-22
Microphone	7-22



Record Time/Size	7-22
Video (recording & sending).....	7-8
Video Calling.....	3-5
Remote Monitor	3-14
Video Calls (answering).....	3-5
Video Calls (placing).....	3-5
Voice Calling.....	3-3
Voice Calls (answering).....	3-3
Voice Calls (placing).....	3-3
Voice Calls (placing while abroad).....	3-4
Voice Recorder.....	9-28
Record Time	9-41
Save and Send.....	9-41
Save Recording to.....	9-42
Voicemail.....	3-12, 3-13
Volume (ringtones).....	14-5

W

Wakeup TV	9-9
Wallpaper.....	2-3
Slide W paper	2-3
Warranty.....	15-40
Weather Indicator	10-6
Icon Update.....	10-20
Manual Update.....	10-6
Weather.....	10-20
Weather Indicator List.....	15-18
Widgets.....	10-2
World Clock.....	9-21

Y

Yahoo! Keitai.....	5-3
---------------------------	------------

Objectives

Accessing Secret Files/Entries

Data Folder	12-4
Messaging folders	4-13
Phone Book	2-17
Schedules/tasks	9-4

Accessing the Internet

From message text.....	4-24
From scan results.....	9-42, 9-45
Media Player	8-3
PC Site Browser	5-4
RSS Feeds.....	5-8
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3

Browsing/Viewing

Document Viewer.....	9-25
e-Books	10-7
PC Site Browser	5-4
S! Information Channel	10-6
S! Quick News	10-5
Yahoo! Keitai	5-3

Calculating

Calculator.....	9-12
Expenses Memo	9-13

Canceling

Alarm.....	9-8
Answer Phone	3-4
Call Forwarding	3-13
Customized Screen	2-19
Download Dictionary	2-11
Function Lock.....	11-2
Hour Minder	9-22
IC Card Lock	9-15
Keypad Lock.....	1-23
Large Font Menu.....	2-2
Manner mode.....	1-21
Offline Mode.....	1-21
S! Familiar Usability.....	2-19
S! Information Channel	10-6
Secret folders.....	4-27, 12-4
Simple Menu	1-17
Speed Dial entries.....	3-7
Voicemail.....	3-13

Changing

Font Size	2-2
Font Weight.....	2-2
Handset Code	1-22
Handset mail address	4-3

Network Password	3-19
PIN	11-5

Changing Ringtones

Phone Book.....	2-17
Ringtone/videos	2-5
Via Data Folder	12-8

Composing/Sending Messages

Feeling Mail.....	4-5
From Call Log records.....	3-17
From Internet pages	5-10
From message text.....	4-24
From Phone Book	2-22
From received messages	4-10
From scan results.....	9-42, 9-45
From Scratch Pad.....	2-15
From sent messages.....	4-29
Graphic Mail	4-6, 4-22
Inserting ASCII Art	9-27
PC Mail.....	4-19
S! Mail	4-4
SMS	4-7

Copying

Calculation results.....	9-38
Data Folder files	12-4
From text entry window	2-10
Scan results	9-43, 9-44, 9-45
Text (e-Books)	10-20
Text (Internet pages)	5-10
Text (Messaging)	4-24
Text (S! Information Channel pages)....	10-19

Downloading

Customized Screen.....	2-4
e-Books	10-7
Music.....	8-3
S! Applications	8-11
Video	8-3
Widgets	10-2

Exchanging Files

IC Transmission.....	13-5
Infrared.....	13-2



- Mass Storage 13-11
- MTP Mode 8-3
- Hiding Files/Entries**
 - Data Folder 12-4
 - Messaging folders 4-13
 - Phone Book 2-17
 - Schedules/tasks 9-34, 9-36
- Inserting/Removing**
 - Battery 15-4
 - Memory Card 12-5
 - USIM Card 15-3
- Locking/Restricting**
 - Application Lock 11-3
 - Call Log 11-3
 - Function Lock 11-2
 - Incoming/outgoing calls 3-19, 3-20
 - Keypad Lock 1-23
 - Mail records 11-3
 - Osafu-Keitai® 9-15
 - PIN Entry 11-2
- Managing Schedules**
 - Calendar 9-2
 - Tasks 9-5
- Measuring Time**
 - Countdown Timer 9-20
 - Stopwatch 9-19
- Notifying Phone Number**
 - Opening My Details 1-23
 - Via IC Transmission 13-17
 - Via Infrared 13-17
- Placing Calls**
 - By entering phone numbers 3-3
 - From Call Log records 3-17
 - From Internet pages 5-10
 - From message text 4-24
 - From Phone Book 2-18
 - From scan results 9-42, 9-45
 - International calls 3-3
 - Speed Dial 3-7
 - Video Calls 3-5
 - While abroad 3-4
- Playing**
 - Answer Phone messages/Caller Voice 3-4
 - Files (Scan Barcode) 9-43
 - Music 8-4
 - Recorded TV programs 6-9
 - Recorded TV programs from Timer log 6-17
 - Split files (TV) 6-16
 - Streams 5-12
 - Video 8-5
 - Video (transferred from Blu-ray Disc recorders) 8-5
 - Voice files 9-28
 - Voicemail messages 3-13
- Rejecting**
 - Calls from public phones 3-11
 - Calls from specified numbers 3-11
 - Calls from unsaved numbers 3-11
 - Undisplayable Caller ID 3-11
 - Withheld Caller ID 3-11
- Resetting/Formatting**
 - All settings 14-9
 - Handset 14-9
 - Memory Card 12-7
- Saving**
 - Backup 13-13
 - Captured still images 7-3, 7-10, 7-12
 - Draft messages 4-21
 - Edited still images 7-13
 - Files (Internet) 5-10
 - Files (SI Information Channel pages) 10-19
 - Graphic Mail templates 4-6
 - Mail attachments 4-24
 - Notepad entries 9-26
 - Phone Book entries 2-16
 - Recorded video 7-7
 - Scan results 9-42, 9-44
 - TV channels 6-12
- Saving Phone Book Entries**
 - Add New Entry 2-16
 - Data Folder files 12-9
 - During a call 3-16
 - From Call Log records 3-17
 - From message text 4-24
 - From received messages 4-24
 - From scan results 9-42, 9-44
- Scanning**
 - Business cards 9-31
 - Kanji 9-33
 - QR Codes 9-29
 - Text 9-32
- Searching**
 - Messages 2-14, 4-13
 - Music to download 8-3
 - Music to play 8-4
 - Notepad entries 9-41
 - Phone Book 2-18
 - Text (Internet pages) 5-10
 - TV program information 6-12
 - Video to play 8-5
 - Web Search 2-14
- Sending via Mail**
 - Data Folder files 4-5, 12-3
 - Notepad entries 9-41
 - QR Codes 9-30
 - Scan results 9-43, 9-44, 9-45
 - Still images 7-4, 7-9
 - URLs 5-10, 5-12
 - Video 7-8
 - Voice files 9-41
- Setting Wallpaper**
 - From attached files 4-24
 - From Phone menu 2-3
 - From scan results 9-43
 - Via Data Folder 12-8
- Showing in Standby**
 - Clock/Calendar 14-4
 - SI Applications 8-11
 - Wallpaper 2-3
 - World Clock 9-21



Using as Alarm Clock

Alarm.....	9-7
Hour Minder	9-22
Wakeup TV	9-9

Using Away from Home

Alarm.....	9-7
Camera	7-2
Digital TV	6-2
Hour Minder	9-22
Osaifu-Keitai®	9-14
Pedometer.....	9-23
Pen Light	1-23
Scratch Pad.....	2-15
Search.....	2-14
Voice Recorder.....	9-28



Warranty & Service

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.15-7** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank Mobile for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.15-41**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (**P.15-41**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank Mobile is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.



Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎0088-250-113



SoftBank 935SH User Guide

August 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 935SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルに協力をお願いします。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.